A

HANDBOOK OF LATIN

Accidence and Syntax

WITH

Examples and Exercises

AND

Notes on Latin Idiom

BY

J. FLETCHER
Professor of Latin, University College

New and Revised Edition

PREFACE.

This book aims at presenting in brief form the essential facts of Latin Accidence and Syntax.

Part I is intended for use in the class-room.

Sections 1 to 32 of Part II cover the work in Latin Syntax usually covered by the Fitst Year in the General Course in the University; Parts II and III that covered by the Second Year.

For use in the composition classes of the Third and Fourth Years of the General Course, some passages of simple narrative for translation into Latin have been added.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I—LATIN ACCIDENCE.

PART II—LATIN SYNTAX.

Part III.

Latin and English Idiom in the Use of Words.

Part IV.

PART I.

LATIN ACCIDENCE

HANDBOOK OF LATIN.

PART I—ACCIDENCE.

I.—FIRST DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	Mens-a,	*a table.*
Gen.	Mens-ae,	*a table's,* or *of a table.*
Dat.	Mens-ae,	*to* or *for a table.*
Acc.	Mens-am,	*a table.*
Voc.	Mens-a,	*O table.*
Abl.	Mens-a,	*from, with, in,* or *by a table.*

PLURAL.

Nom.	Mens-ae,	*tables.*
Gen.	Mens-arum,	*tables',* or *of tables.*
Dat.	Mens-is,	*to* or *for tables.*
Acc.	Mens-as,	*tables.*
Voc.	Mens-ae,	*O tables.*
Abl.	Mens-is,	*from, with, in,* or *by tables.*

NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION.

Words of two syllables have the Accent on the penult: as,

Ménsa, bóna.

Words of more than two syllables have the Accent on the penult, when the penult is *long;* otherwise on the antepenult: as,

Ductóres, amábam, mónŭi.

English equivalents for the distinctive sounds of the Roman letters are:

Long vowels:

    a like *a* in *father.*   i like *i* in *machine.*

    e like *e* in *grey.*   o like *o* in *bone.*

           u like *oo* in *root.*

Short vowels:

    a like the first *a* in *aha.*   i like *i* in *fit.*

    e like *e* in *met.*   o like *o* in *or.*

           u like *u* in *full.*

Consonants:

| c and g are hard, as in *come* | i consonant like *y* in *yes.* |
| and *go.* | v like *w* in *wine.* |

Diphthongs:

ae like *ai* in *aisle.*	au like *ou* in *house.*
oe like *oi* in *toil.*	eu (rare) like *eh-oo.*
ui almost like *we.*	ei (rare) like *ei* in *eight.*

II. SECOND DECLENSION.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Serv-us, *a slave.*	Serv-i, *slaves.*
Gen.	Serv-i, *of a slave.*	Serv-orum, *of slaves.*
Dat.	Serv-o, *to or for a slave.*	Servi-s, *to or for slaves.*
Acc.	Serv-um, *a slave.*	Serv-os, *slaves.*
Voc.	Serv-e, *O slave!*	Serv-i, *O slaves.*
Abl.	Serv-o, *from, etc., a slave.*	Serv-is, *from, etc., slaves.*
Nom.	Puer, *a boy.*	Puer-i, *boys.*
Gen.	Puer-i, *of a boy.*	Puer-orum, *of boys.*
Dat.	Puer-o, *to or for a boy.*	Puer-is, *to or for boys.*
Acc.	Puer-um, *a boy.*	Puer-os, *boys.*
Voc.	Puer, *O boy.*	Puer-i, *O boys*
Abl.	Puer-o, *from, etc., a boy.*	Puer-is, *from, etc., boys.*
Nom.	Magister, *a master.*	Magistr-i, *masters.*
Gen.	Magistr-i, *of a master.*	Magistr-orum, *of masters.*
Dat.	Magistr-o, *to or for a master.*	Magistr-is, *to or for masters.*
Acc.	Magistr-um, *a master.*	Magistr-os, *masters.*
Voc.	Magister, *O master.*	Magistr-i, *O masters.*
Abl.	Magistr-o, *from, etc., a master.*	Magistr-is, *from, etc., masters.*

N.B.—The following nouns are declined like Magister, omitting the e: Ager, *field* (G. agri); aper, *a boar;* arbiter, *a judge;* auster, *south wind;* cancer, *a crab;* caper, *a goat;* culter, *a knife;* faber, *a smith;* liber, *a book;* minister, *a servant.*

N.V.&Acc.	Mal-um, neut., *an apple.*	Mal-a, *apples.*
Gen.	Mal-i, *of an apple.*	Mal-orum, *of apples.*
Dat.	Mal-o, *to an apple.*	Mal-is, *to apples.*
Abl.	Mal-o, *from, etc., an apple.*	Mal-is, *from, etc., apples.*

N.B.—Neuter nouns have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike in both numbers, and in the plural these cases end in a.

Nom.	Deus, *a god.*	De-i (dii), di.	
Gen.	De-i.	De-orum, deum.	
Dat.	De-o.	Deis (diis), dis.	
Acc.	De-um.	De-os.	
Voc.	Deus.	De-i (dii), di.	
Abl.	De-o.	De-is (diis), dis.	
Nom.	Vir, *a man.*	Vir i.	
Gen.	Vir i.	Vir orum.	
Dat.	Vir o.	Vir is.	
Acc.	Vir um.	Vir os.	
Voc.	Vir.	Vir i.	
Abl.	Vir o.	Vir is.	

III. THIRD DECLENSION.

(For Rules of Gender see p. 6).

SINGULAR.

Nom.	Rex, *king*	Pes, *foot*	Corpus, *body*	Caput, *head*
Gen.	Reg-is	Ped-is	Corpor-is	Capit-is
Dat.	Reg-i	Ped-i	Corpori	Capit-i
Acc.	Reg-em	Ped-em	Corpus	Caput
Voc.	Rex	Pes	Corpus	Caput
Abl.	Reg-e	Ped-e	Corpor-e	Capit-e

PLURAL.

Nom.	Reg-es	Ped-es	Corpor-a	Capit-a
Gen.	Reg-um	Ped-um	Corpor-um	Capit-um
Dat.	Reg-ibus	Ped-ibus	Corpor-ibus	Capit-ibus
Acc.	Reg-es	Ped-es	Corpor-a	Capit-a
Voc.	Reg-es	Ped-es	Corpor-a	Capit-a
Abl.	Reg-ibus	Ped-ibus	Corpor-ibus	Capit-ibus

SINGULAR.

Nom.	Urbs, *city*	Amans, *lover*	Mare, *sea*	Animal
Gen.	Urbis	Amantis	Maris	Animalis
Dat.	Urbi	Amanti	Mari	Animali
Acc.	Urbem	Amantem	Mare	Animal
Voc.	Urbs	Amans	Mare	Animal
Abl.	Urbe	Amante (*or* i)	Mari	Animali

PLURAL.

Nom.	Urbes	Amantes	Maria	Animalia
Gen.	Urbium	Amantium	Marium	Animalium
Dat.	Urbibus	Amantibus	Maribus	Animalibus
Acc.	Urbes	Amantes	Maria	Animalia
Voc.	Urbes	Amantes	Maria	Animalia
Abl.	Urbibus	Amantibus	Maribus	Animalibus

N.B.—*Nouns in -s preceded by a consonant take the Gen. Plur. in -ium.* The Pres. Participle also takes the Abl. Sing. in -i, unless in the Abl. Absolute: as, Tullo regnante, *in the reign of Tullus.* Nouns in e, *al*, and *ar*, take the Abl. Sing. in -i, the Nom. and Acc. Plur. in -ia, and the Gen. Plur. in -ium.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	Host-is, *enemy*	*Nom.*	Nubes, *cloud*
Gen.	Host-is	*Gen.*	Nub-is
Dat.	Host-i	*Dat.*	Nub-i
Acc.	Host-em	*Acc.*	Nub-em
Voc.	Host-is	*Voc.*	Nub-es
Abl.	Host-e	*Abl.*	Nub-e

PLURAL.

Nom.	Host-es	Nub-es
Gen.	Host-ium	Nub-ium
Dat.	Host-ibus	Nub-ibus
Acc.	Host-es (-is)	Nub-es (-is)
Voc.	Host-es	Nub-es
Abl.	Host-ibus	Nub-ibus

N.B.—Nouns of two syllables in -*is* or -*es* (-i stems) have the Gen. Plur. in -ium and the Acc. Plur. often in -is.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Bos, *ox*	Bov-es	V-is, *force*	Vir-es
Gen.	Bov-is	⎰ Bov-um ⎱ Bo-um	V-is	Vir-ium

Dat.	Bov-i	{ Bo-bus { Bu-bus	V-i	Vir-ibus
Acc.	Bov-em	Bov-es	V-im	Vir-es
Voc.	Bos	Bov-es	V-is	Vir-es
Abl.	Bov-e	{ Bo-bus { Bu-bus	V-i	Vir-ibus

N.B.—The Nom. and Gen. Sing. of the common nouns of the III. Decl. are easily learnt, and, when these cases are known, the declension is regular.—Thus:

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	Senex, *old man*	Iter, *route*, N.	Senes	Itinera
Gen.	Senis	Itineris	Senum	Itinerum
Dat.	Seni	Itineri	Senibus	Itineribus
Acc.	Senem	Iter	Senes	Itinera
Voc.	Senex	Iter	Senes	Itinera
Abl.	Sene	Itinere	Senibus	Itineribus

Decline: Iupiter, Iovis; nix, nivis, *snow;* homo, hominis, *a man;* vox vocis, *a voice;* onus, oneris, *a load;* laus, laudis, *praise;* rus, ruris *the country;* flumen, fluminis, *river;* pars, partis, *part;* lex, legis, *law.*

IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. & Voc.	Fruct-us, M., *fruit*	Fruct-us
Gen.	Fruct-us	Fruct-uum
Dat.	Fruct-ui	Fruct-ibus
Acc.	Fruct-um	Fruct-us
Abl.	Fruct-u	Fruct-ibus
N.V.&Acc.	Gen-u, N., *a knee*	Gen-ua
Gen.	Gen-us	Gen-uum
Dat.	Gen-u	Gen-ibus
Abl.	Gen-u	Gen-ibus

N.B.—Tribus, *a tribe*, and lacus, *a lake*, have *ubus* not *-ibus* in the Dat. and Abl. Plur.; specus, *a cave*, and portus, *a port*, have both *-ubus* and *-ibus*.

2—

Domus, *a house*, is declined thus:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Dom-us	Dom-us
Gen.	Dom-us	Dom-orum (uum)
Dat.	Dom-ui (-o)	Dom-ibus
Acc.	Dom-um	Dom-os (-us)
Voc.	Dom-us	Dom-us
Abl.	Dom-o (-u)	Dom-ibus

V. FIFTH DECLENSION.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. & Voc.	Di-es, M. or F., *a day*	Di-es, m.
Gen.	Di-ei	Di-erum
Dat.	Di-ei	Di-ebus
Acc.	Di-em	Di-es
Abl.	Di-e	Di-ebus

VI. RULES OF LATIN GENDER.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns in -a of the First Decl. are Fem., except the names of males: as, Magna silva, *a great wood.* But: Magnus poeta, *a great poet.*

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns in -us and -er of the Second Decl. are Masc. Those in -um are Neut.: as, Longus hortus, *a long garden;* bonus puer, *a good boy,* multa bella, *many wars.*

THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Most nouns of the Third Decl. ending in -er, -or, -os, -es (increasing in the genitive), -o (except -do, -go, -io), are Masc.: as, Carcer Romanus, *a Roman prison;* honor magnus, *a great honor;* flos albus, *a white flower;* paries altus, *a high wall;* sermo Latinus, *the Latin language.*

2. Most nouns of the Third Decl. which end in -do, -go, -io, -as, -is, -aus, -x, -es (not increasing in the genitive), -s (preceded by a consonant), -ūs (in words of more than one syllable), are Fem.: as, Multitudo magna, *a great multitude,* imago cerea, *a wax image;* oratio longa, *a long speech,* aestas calida, *a warm summer;* avis rara,

a rare bird; laus parva, *little credit;* vox magna, *a loud voice;* clades nostra, *our defeat;* plebs Romana, *the Roman populace;* virtūs divina, *heroic valor.*

3. Most nouns of the Third Decl. which end in -c, -a, -t, -e, -l, -n, -ar, ur, -us, -ūs (in words of one syllable), are Neut.: as, Lac album, *white milk;* poema longum, *a long poem;* caput suum, *his own head;* mare magnum, *a great sea;* animal ferum, *a wild animal;* limen altum, *a high threshold;* calcar acutum, *a sharp spur;* fulgur clarum, *a bright flash;* tempus antiquum, *ancient time;* ius magnum, *a great right.*

State the gender of the following:

Navis, navis, *a ship*	Carmen, carminis *a song*
Nix, nivis, *snow*	Radix, radicis, *a root*
Litus, litoris, *a shore*	Animal, animalis *an animal*
Onus, oneris, *a load*	Mare, maris, *sea*
Frigus, frigoris, *frost—*	Rus, ruris *country*
Hiems, hiemis, *winter*	Turris, turris, *a tower*

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns in -us of the Fourth Decl. are Masc., those in -u are Neut.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the Fifth Decl. are Fem. except dies, *a day,* which is Masc. or Fem. in the Sing., but only Masc. in the Plur.

For exceptions to the Rules, see Latin Grammar.

VII. WORDS THAT DIFFER IN MEANING IN THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Aedes, *a temple*	Aedes, *a house* (pl.)
Auxilium *help*	Auxilia, *allied forces*
Castrum, *a fort*	Castra, *a camp*
Copia, *plenty*	Copiae, *forces*
Finis, *an end*	Fines, *boundaries*
Gratia, *favor*	Gratiae *thanks*
Impedimentum, *hindrance*	Impedimenta, *baggage*
Littera, *a letter* (of the alphabet)	Litterae, *epistle, literature*
Ludus, *play*	Ludi, *public games*
Opem (acc), *help*	Opes, *wealth*
Opera, *labor*	Operae, *work-people*
Sal, *salt*	Sales, *wit*

VIII. ADJECTIVES.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Adjectives of three terminations in the Nominative, in -us, -a, -um
or -er, -a, -um, are declined like nouns of the First and Second Decl.
Thus:

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	Bon-us	Bon-a	Bon-um
Gen.	Bon-i	Bon-ae	Bon-i
Dat.	Bon-o	Bon-ae	Bon-o
Acc.	Bon-um	Bon-am	Bon-um
Voc.	Bon-e	Bon-a	Bon-um
Abl.	Bon-o	Bon-a	Bon-o

PLURAL.

Nom.	Bon-i	Bon-ae	Bon-a
Gen.	Bon orum	Bon arum	Bon-orum
	&c.	&c.	&c.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	Aeger, *sick*	Aegr-a	Aegr-um
Gen.	Aegr-i	Aegr-ae	Aegr-i
	&c.	&c.	&c.
Nom.	Tener, *tender*	Tener-a	Tener-um .
Gen.	Tener-i	Tener-ae	Tener-i
	&c.	&c.	&c.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

Unus, *one*, is declined thus:

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	Un-us	Un-a	Un-um
Gen.	Un-ius	Un-ius	Un-ius
Dat.	Un-i	Un-i	Un-i
Acc.	Un-um	Un-am	Un-um
Voc.		—	—
Abl.	Un-o	Un-a	Un-o

Like Unus are declined: Uter, utra, utrum, *which of the two* (Gen. utrius); neuter, *neither of the two*; alius, -a, -ud, *an other*; nullus, -a, -um, *no one*; solus, *alone*; totus, *whole*; ullus, *any*; alter, era, -erum, *the other*.   The genitive of alter is alterius.

ADJECTIVES OF III DECLENSION.

Adjectives of three terminations in -er, -is, -e, or of two terminations in -is and -e, are declined according to the III Decl. Thus:—

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	Acer	Acr-is	Acr-e
Gen.	Acr-is	Acr-is	Acr-is
Dat.	Acr-i	Acr-i	Acr-i
Acc.	Acr-em	Acr-em	Acr-e
Voc.	Acer	Acr-is	Acr-e
Abl.	Acr-i	Acr-i	Acr-i

PLURAL.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Acr-es	Acr-es	Acr-ia
Gen.	Acr-ium	Acr-ium	Acr-ium
Dat.	Acr-ibus	Acr-ibus	Acr-ibus
Acc.	Acr-es	Acr-es	Acr-ia
Voc.	Acr-es	Acr-es	Acr-ia
Abl.	Acr-ibus	Acr-ibus	Acr-ibus

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom. Mit-is	Mit-e	Mit-es	Mit-ia
Gen. Mit-is	Mit-is	Mit-ium	Mit-ium
Dat. Mit-i	Mit-i	Mit-ibus	Mit-ibus
Acc. Mit-em	Mit-e	Mit-es	Mit-ia
Voc. Mit-is	Mit-e	Mit-es	Mit-ia
Abl. Mit-i	Mit-i	Mit-ibus	Mit-ibus

N.B. All adjectives of three endings in the Nom. like Acer, and all adjectives of two endings in the Nom. like Mitis, have Abl. Sing. in -i, Nom. Neut. Pl. in -ia; Gen. Pl. in -ium.

Comparatives and adjectives of one ending in Nom., have Abl. Sing. in -i or -e; comparatives, the Neuter Pl. in -a, and Gen. Pl. in -um.

Adjectives of one termination, from Nom. in -x or -s preceded by a consonant (like Audax or Oriens), have the Nom. Pl. in -ia and Gen. Pl. in -ium.

Adjectives of one termination are declined thus:

| | SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Audax	Audax	Audac-es	Audac-ia
Gen.	Audac-is	Audac-is	Audac-ium	Audac-ium
Dat.	Audac-i	Audac-i	Audac-ibus	Audac-ibus
Acc.	Audac-em	Audax	Audac-es	Audac-ia
Voc.	Audax	Audax	Audac-es	Audac-ia
Abl.	Audac-i (e)	Audac-i (e)	Audac-ibus	Audac-ibus

Irregular Adjs. of the III Decl. are:

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Duo	Du-ae	Duo	Tres	Tr-ia
Gen.	Du-orum	Du-arum	Du-orum	Tr-ium	Tr-ium
Dat.	Du-obus	Du-abus	Du-obus	Tr-ibus	Tr-ibus
Acc.	Du-os(duo)	Du-as	Duo	Tres	Tr-ia
Voc.	Duo	Du-ae	Duo	Tres	Tr-ia
Abl.	Du-obus	Du-abus	Du-obus	Tr-ibus	Tr-ibus

Mille, *a thousand*, is in the Sing. indecl. In Pl.: *Nom.* and *Acc.* Millia; *Gen.* millium; *Dat.* and *Abl.* millibus.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Most Adjs. are compared by means of the endings -ior (Masc. and Fem.), -ius (Neut.), for the comparative, and -issimus (-a, -um) for the superlative; as, Altus, *high;* altior, *higher;* altissimus, *highest;* gravis, *heavy*, gravior, gravissimus.

The Comparative is declined thus:

| | SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Mitior	Mitius	Mitior-es	Mitior-a

Gen.	Mitior-is	Mitior-is	Mitior-um	Mitior-um
Dat.	Mitior-i	Mitior-i	Mitior-ibus	Mitior-ibus
Acc.	Mitior-em	Mitius	Mitior-es	Mitior-a
Voc.	Mitior	Mitius	Mitior-es	Mitior-a
Abl.	Mitior-e (-ì)	Mitior-e (-ì)	Mitior-ibus	Mitior-ibus

The comparative Plus, *more*, is irregular:

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*	
Nom.	—	Plus	Plur-es	Plur-a
Gen.		Plur-is	Plur-ium	Plur-ium
Dat.		—	Plur-ibus	Plur-ibus
Acc.		Plus	Plur-es	Plur-a
Voc.	—		Plur-es	Plur-a
Abl.		Plur-e	Plur-ibus	Plur-ibus

N.B.—Adjectives in -us preceded by a vowel, usually form the comparative and superlative by means of the adverbs magis, *more*, and maxime, *most*, respectively: as,

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
Idoneus, *fit*	Magis idoneus	Maxime idoneus
Dubius, *doubtful*	Magis dubius	Maxime dubius

But Adjs. in -quus, form the comparative and superlative regularly: as, Antiquus, *ancient*, antiquior, antiquissimus.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

1. Adjs. in -er have the superl. in -rimus: as,

Acer, *sharp*	Acrior	Acerrimus
Miser, *wretched*	Miserior	Miserrimus
Celer, *swift*	Celerior	Celerrimus
Pulcher, *beautiful*	Pulchrior	Pulcherrimus
Niger, *black*	Nigrior	Nigerrimus

Note.—Vetus, veteris, *old*, has no comparative, but has veterrimus in the superlative. Maturus, *ripe*, has both maturrimus and maturissimus.

2. The following Adjs. in -ilis form their Comparative regularly in -ior, but their Superlative in -limus:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Facilis, *easy*	Facilior	Facillimus
Difficilis, *difficult*	Difficilior	Difficillimus
Similis, *similar, like*	Similior	Simillimus
Dissimilis, *unlike*	Dissimilior	Dissimillimus
Gracilis, *slender*	Gracilior	Gracillimus
Humilis, *low*	Humilior	Humillimus

3. Adjs. in -dicus, *saying,* -ficus, *doing,* and -volus, *willing,* form their Comparative and Superlative from the corresponding Participle in -ens, as:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Maledicus, *slanderous*	Maledicentior	Maledicentissimus
Munificus, *lavish*	Munificentior	Munificentissimus
Benevolus, *kind*	Benevolentior	Benevolentissimus

Note. Egenus, *needy,* has egentior, egentissimus; and providus, *foreseeing,* has providentior, providentissimus.

4. The following Adjs. are irregular in their Comparison:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Bonus, *good*	Melior, *better*	Optimus, *best*
Malus, *bad*	Peior, *worse*	Pessimus, *worst*
Magnus, *great*	Maior, *greater*	Maximus, *greatest*
Parvus, *small*	Minor, *less*	Minimus, *least*
Multus, *much*	Plus, *more*	Plurimus, *most*
Dives, *or*	Divitior, *or*	Divitissimus, *or*
Dis, *rich*	Ditior	Ditissimus

5. The following Adjs. are irregular in the Superlative:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Exterus, *outward*	Exterior	Extremus *and* Extimus
Inferus, *lower*	Inferior	Infimus *and* Imus
Superus, *higher*	Superior	Supremus *and* Summus
Posterus, *behind*	Posterior	Postremus *and* Postumus

Note.—Mons infimus is *the lowest mountain* (of a range); mons

imus, *the bottom of the mountain.* Supremus mons is, *the highest mountain* (of a group of mountains); summus mons, *the top of the mountain.*

6. Some Adjs. have no Positive, as:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
——	Citerior, *hither*	Citimus, *hithermost*
——	Deterior, *worse*	Deterrimus, *worst*
——	Interior, *inner*	Intimus, *innermost*
——	Ocior, *swifter*	Ocissimus, *swiftest*
——	Prior, *former*	Primus, *first*
——	Propior, *nearer*	Proximus, *next, nearest*
——	Ulterior, *farther*	Ultimus, *farthest, last*

From Senex (*an old man*) is formed senior or natu maior, *older,* and natu maximus, *oldest.*

From Iuvenis, *a young man,* is formed iunior or natu minor, *younger,* and natu minimus, *youngest.*

IX. ADVERBS.

Adverbs are formed from Adjs. of the II Decl. by changing the -i of the Gen. Sing. into -e; from Adjs. of the III Decl. by adding -ter or -iter to the last letter of the stem. Thus:

Dignus (*worthy*), dignē, *worthily;* pulcher, pulchri (*beautiful*), pulchrē, *beautifully;* ferox (*spirited*), ferociter, *in a spirited manner.*

The Comparative ends in -ius and the Superlative in -issime. Thus: Digne, dignius, dignissime. Ferociter, ferocius, ferocissime.

Some adverbs are formed irregularly from Adjs., as:

ADJECTIVE.		ADVERBS	
	POSITIVE.	COMPAR.	SUPERL.
Bonus, *good*	Bene, *well*	Melius	Optime
Malus, *bad*	Male, *badly*	Peius	Pessime
Multus, *much*	Multum	Plus	Plurimum
Parvus, *small, little*	Parum, *little*	Minus	Minime
Magnus, *great*	Magnopere	Magis	Maxime

Some adverbs, not derived from Adjs., are compared, as:

POSITIVE.	COMPAR.	SUPERL.
Diu, *long*	Diutius	Diutissime
Saepe, *often*	Saepius	Saepissime

X. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

Arabic Symbol	Roman Symbol	Cardinals	Ordinals	Distributives	Numeral Adverbs
1	I	unus, a, um, *one*	primus, a, um, *first*	singuli, ae, a, *one by one*	semel, *once*
2	II	duo, duae, duo, *two*	secundus, a, um, *second* (alter)	bini, ae, a, *two by two*	bis, *twice*
3	III	tres, tria, *three*	tertius, *third*	terni (trini)	ter
4	IV	quattuor	quartus	quaterni	quater
5	V	quinque	quintus	quini	quinquies
6	VI	sex	sextus	seni	sexies
7	VII	septem	septimus	septeni	septies
8	VIII	octo	octavus	octoni	octies
9	IX	novem	nonus	noveni	novies
10	X	decem	decimus	deni	decies
11	XI	undecim	undecimus	undeni	undecies
12	XII	duodecim	duodecimus	duodeni	duodecies
13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	terni deni	terdecies
14	XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quaterni deni	quaterdecies
15	XV	quindecim	quintus decimus	quini deni	quindecies
16	XVI	sedecim	sextus decimus	seni deni	sedecies
17	XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus	septeni deni	septiesdecies
18	XVIII	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodeviceni	duodevicies
19	XIX	undeviginti	undevicesimus	undeviceni	undevicies
20	XX	viginti	vicesimus	viceni	vicies
21	XXI	unus et viginti (viginti unus)	primus et vicesimus (vicesimus primus)	viceni singuli	semel et vicies (vicies semel)
28	XXVIII	duodetriginta	duodetricesimus	duodetriceni	duodetricies

Another form of numeral adverbs in -iens is in -ies — quinquies, sexies.

TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS Continued.

Arabic Symbol.	Roman Symbol.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Numeral Adverbs.
29	XXIX.	undetriginta	undetrigesimus	undetriceni	undetriciens
30	XXX.	triginta	trigesimus	triceni	triciens
40	XL.	quadraginta	quadragesimus	quadrageni	quadragiens
50	L.	quinquaginta	quinquagesimus	quinquageni	quinquagiens
60	LX.	sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexageni	sexagiens
70	LXX.	septuaginta	septuagesimus	septuageni	septuagiens
80	LXXX.	octoginta	octogesimus	octogeni	octogiens
90	XC.	nonaginta	nonagesimus	nonageni	nonagiens
100	C.	centum	centesimus	centeni	centiens
101	CI.	centum unus or centum et unus	centesimus primus or centesimus et primus	centeni et singuli or centeni singuli	centiens semel
200	CC.	ducenti, ae, a	ducentesimus	duceni	ducentiens
300	CCC.	trecenti, ae, a	trecentesimus	treceni	trecentiens
400	CCCC.	quadringenti, ae, a	quadringentesimus	quadringeni	quadringentiens
500	D. or IƆ.	quingenti, ae, a	quingentesimus	quingeni	quingentiens
600	DC.	sexcenti, ae a	sexcentesimus	sexceni	sexcentiens
700	DCC.	septingenti, ae, a	septingentesimus	septingeni	septingentiens
800	DCCC.	octingenti, ae, a	octingentesimus	octingeni	octingentiens
900	DCCCC.	nongenti, ae, a	nongentesimus	nongeni	nongentiens
1,000	M or CIƆ.	mille	millesimus	singula millia	milliens
2,000	MM.	duo millia	bis millesimus	bina millia	bis milliens
5,000	IƆƆ.	quinque millia	quinquiens millesimus	quina millia	quinquiens milliens
10,000	CCIƆƆ.	decem millia	deciens millesimus	dena millia	deciens milliens
100,000	CCCIƆƆƆ.	centum millia	centiens millesimus	centena millia	centiens milliens

XI. PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

Ego, *I.*   Tu, *thou, you* (sing.)

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. Ego	Nos	Tu	Vos
Gen. Mei	Nostrum, nostri	Tui	Vestrum, vestri
Dat. Mihi	Nobis	Tibi	Vobis
Acc. Me	Nos	Te	Vos
Voc	—	Tu	Vos
Abl. Me	Nobis	Te	Vobis

Sui, *of himself.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Gen. Sui	Sui
Dat. Sibi	Sibi
Acc. Se	Se
Abl. Se	Se

Ego me video, *I see myself.*

DEMONSTRATIVE AND PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Hic, *this*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	Hic	Haec	Hoc
Gen.	Huius	Huius	Huius
Dat.	Huic	Huic	Huic
Acc.	Hunc	Hanc	Hoc
Abl.	Hoc	Hac	Hoc

PLURAL.

Nom.	Hi	Hae	Haec
Gen.	Horum	Harum	Horum
Dat.	His	His	His
Acc.	Hos	Has	Haec
Abl.	His	His	His

Ille, *that*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	Ille	Illa	Illud
Gen.	Illius	Illius	Illius
Dat.	Illi	Illi	Illi
Acc.	Illum	Illam	Illud
Abl.	Illo	Illa	Illo

PLURAL.

Nom.	Illi	Illae	Illa
Gen.	Illorum	Illarum	Illorum
Dat.	Illis	Illis	Illis
Acc.	Illos	Illas	Illa
Abl.	Illis	Illis	Illis

N.B.—Like Ille are declined: Ipse, -a, um, *self*, and Iste, -a, -ud, *that of yours.*

Is, *he, this, that*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	Is	Ea	Id
Gen.	Eius	Eius	Eius
Dat.	Ei	Ei	Ei
Acc.	Eum	Eam	Id
Abl.	Eo	Ea	Eo

PLURAL.

Nom.	Ei (ii)	Eae	Ea
Gen.	Eorum	Earum	Eorum
Dat.	Eis (iis)	Eis (iis)	Eis (iis)
Acc.	Eos	Eas	Ea
Abl.	Eis (iis)	Eis (iis)	Eis (iis)

Idem, *the same*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	Idem	Eadem	Idem
Gen.	Eiusdem	Eiusdem	Eiusdem
Dat.	Eidem	Eidem	Eidem
Acc.	Eundem	Eandem	Idem
Abl.	Eodem	Eadem	Eodem

PLURAL.

Nom.	Eidem	Eaedem	Eadem
	Iidem		
Gen.	Eorundem	Earundem	Eorundem
Dat.	Eisdem	Eisdem	Eisdem
	Iisdem	Iisdem	Iisdem
Acc.	Eosdem	Easdem	Eadem
Abl.	Eisdem	Eisdem	Eisdem
	Iisdem	Iisdem	Iisdem

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

Qui, *who*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Qui	Quae	Quod
Gen.	Cuius	Cuius	Cuius
Dat.	Cui	Cui	Cui
Acc.	Quem	Quam	Quod
Abl.	Quo	Qua	Quo

PLURAL.

Nom.	Qui	Quae	Quae
Gen.	Quorum	Quarum	Quorum
Dat.	Quibus	Quibus	Quibus
Acc.	Quos	Quas	Quae
Abl.	Quibus	Quibus	Quibus

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

Quis, *who?*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Quis	Quae	Quid
Gen.	Cuius	Cuius	Cuius
Dat.	Cui	Cui	Cui
Acc.	Quem	Quam	Quid
Abl.	Quo	Qua	Quo

PLURAL.

Nom.	Qui	Quae	Quae
Gen.	Quorum	Quarum	Quorum
Dat.	Quibus	Quibus	Quibus
Acc.	Quos	Quas	Quae
Abl.	Quibus	Quibus	Quibus

XII. REGULAR VERBS.

Principal	1. Conjugation:	Amo	Amare	Amavi	Amatum
Parts	2. "	Moneo	Monēre	Monui	Monitum
	3. "	Rego	Regēre	Rexi	Rectum
	4. "	Audio	Audire	Audivi	Auditum

ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Am-o	Mon-eo	Reg-o	Aud-io
2. Am-as	Mon-es	Reg-is	Aud-is
3. Am-at	Mon-et	Reg-it	Aud-it

PLURAL.

1. Am-amus	Mon-emus	Reg-imus	Aud-imus
2. Am-atis	Mon-etis	Reg-itis	Aud-itis
3. Am-ant	Mon-ent	Reg-unt	Aud-iunt

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Am-abam	Mon-ebam	Reg-ebam	Audi-ebam
2. Am-abas	Mon-ebas	Reg-ebas	Audi-ebas
3. Am-abat	Mon-ebat	Reg-ebat	Audi-ebat

PLURAL.

1. Am-abamus	Mon-ebamus	Reg-ebamus	Audi-ebamus
2. Am abatis	Mon ebatis	Reg-ebatis	Audi-ebatis
3. Am abant	Mon-ebant	Reg-ebant	Audi-ebant

FUTURE.

Singular.

1. Am-abo	Mon-ebo	Reg-am	Audi-am
2. Am-abis	Mon-ebis	Reg-es	Audi-es
3. Am-abit	Mon-ebit	Reg-et	Audi-et

Plural.

1. Am-abimus	Mon-ebimus	Reg-emus	Audi-emus
2. Am-abitis	Mon-ebitis	Reg-etis	Audi-etis
3. Am-abunt	Mon-ebunt	Reg-ent	Audi-ent

PERFECT.

Singular.

1. Amav-i	Monu-i	Rex-i	Audiv-i
2. Amav-isti	Monu-isti	Rex-isti	Audiv-isti
3. Amav-it	Monu-it	Rex-it	Audiv-it

Plural.

1. Amav-imus	Monu-imus	Rex-imus	Audiv-imus
2. Amav-istis	Monu-istis	Rex-istis	Audiv-istis
3. Amav-ērunt / Amav-ēre	Monu-erunt / Monu-ere	Rex-erunt / Rex-ere	Audiv-erunt / Audiv-ere

PLUPERFECT.

Singular.

1. Amav-eram	Monu-eram	Rex-eram	Audiv-eram
2. Amav-eras	Monu-eras	Rex-eras	Audiv-eras
3. Amav-erat	Monu-erat	Rex-erat	Audiv-erat

Plural.

1. Amav-eramus	Monu-eramus	Rex-eramus	Audiv-eramus
2. Amav-eratis	Monu-eratis	Rex-eratis	Audiv-eratis
3. Amav-erant	Monu-erant	Rex-erant	Audiv-erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

Singular.

1. Amav-ero	Monu-ero	Rex-ero	Audiv-ero
2. Amav-eris	Monu-eris	Rex-eris	Audiv-eris
3. Amav-erit	Monu-erit	Rex-erit	Audiv-erit

PLURAL.

1. Amav-erimus	Monu-erimus	Rex-erimus	Audiv-erimus
2. Amav-eritis	Monu-eritis	Rex-eritis	Audiv-eritis
3. Amav-erint	Monu-erint	Rex-erint	Audiv-eriut

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Am-em	Mon-eam	Reg-am	Audi-am
2. Am-es	Mon-eas	Reg-as	Audi-as
3. Am-et	Mon-eat	Reg-at	Audi-at

PLURAL.

1. Am-emus	Mon-eamus	Reg-amus	Audi-amus
2. Am-etis	Mon-eatis	Reg-atis	Audi-atis
3. Am-ent	Mon-eant	Reg-ant	Audi-ant

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Am-arem	Mon-erem	Reg-erem	Aud-irem
2. Am-ares	Mon-eres	Reg-eres	Aud-ires
3. Am-aret	Mon-eret	Reg-eret	Aud-iret

PLURAL.

1. Am-aremus	Mon-eremus	Reg-eremus	Aud-iremus
2. Am-aretis	Mon-eretis	Reg-eretis	Aud-iretis
3. Am-arent	Mon-erent	Reg-erent	Aud-irent

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Amav-erim	Monu-erim	Rex-erim	Audiv-erim
2. Amav-eris	Monu-eris	Rex-eris	Audiv-eris
3. Amav-erit	Monu-erit	Rex-erit	Audiv-erit

PLURAL.

1. Amav-erimus	Monu-erimus	Rex-erimus	Audiv-erimus
2. Amav-eritis	Monu-eritis	Rex-eritis	Audiv-eritis
3. Amav-erint	Monu-erint	Rex-erint	Audiv-erint

3—

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Amav-issem	Monu-issem	Rex-issem	Audiv-issem
2. Amav-isses	Monu-isses	Rex-isses	Audiv-isses
3. Amav-isset	Monu-isset	Rex-isset	Audiv-isset

PLURAL.

1. Amav-issemus	Monu-issemus	Rex-issemus	Audiv-issemus
2. Amav-issetis	Monu-issetis	Rex-issetis	Audiv issetis
3. Amav-issent	Monu-issent	Rex-issent	Audiv-issent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2. Am a	Mon e	Reg e	Aud i

PLURAL.

2. Am ate	Mon ete	Reg ite	Aud ite

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

2. Am ato	Mon eto	Reg ito	Aud ito
you shall love			
3. Am ato	Mon eto	Reg ito	Aud ito
he shall love			

PLURAL.

2. Am atote	Mon etote	Reg itote	Aud itote
you shall love			
3. Am anto	Mon ento	Reg unto	Aud iunto
they shall love			

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Ama re	Mone re	Rege re	Audi re
Perf.	Amav isse	Monu isse	Rex isse	Audiv isse
Fut.	Ama turus	Moni turus	Rec turus	Audi turus
	esse	esse	esse	esse

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Ama ns	Mone ns	Reg ens	Audi ens
Fut. Ama turus	Moni turus	Rec turus	Audi turus

SUPINE.

Ama tum	Moni tum	Rec tum	Audi tum
tu	tu	tu	tu

GERUND.

Gen. Ama ndi	Mone ndi	Rege ndi	Audi endi
Dat. Ama ndo	Mone ndo	Rege ndo	Audi endo
Acc. Ama ndum	Mone ndum	Rege ndum	Audi endum
Abl. Ama ndo	Mone ndo	Rege ndo	Audi endo

PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Am or	Mone or	Reg or	Audi or
2. { Ama ris	{ Mone ris	{ Regĕ ris	{ Audi ris
{ Ama re	{ Mone re	{ Rege re	{ Audi re
3. Ama tur	Mone tur	Regi tur	Audi tur

PLURAL.

1. Ama mur	Mone mur	Regi mur	Audi mur
2. Ama mini	Mone mini	Regi mini	Audi mini
3. Ama ntur	Mone ntur	Regu ntur	Audi untur

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama bar	Mone bar	Rege bar	Audi ebar
2. { Ama baris	{ Mone baris	{ Rege baris	{ Audi ebaris
{ Ama bare	{ Mone bare	{ Rege bare	{ Audi ebare
3. Ama batur	Mone batur	Rege batur	Audi ebatur

PLURAL.

1. Ama bamur	Mone bamur	Rege bamur	Audi ebamur
2. Ama bamini	Mone bamini	Rege bamini	Audi ebamini
3. Ama bantur	Mone bantur	Rege bantur	Audi ebantur

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama bor	Mone bor	Rega r	Audia r
2. { Ama beris	{ Mone beris	} Rege ris	} Audie ris
{ Ama bere	{ Mone bere	{ Rege re	{ Audie re
3. Ama bitur	Mone bitur	Rege tur	Audie tur

PLURAL.

1. Ama bimur	Mone bimur	Rege mur	Audie mur
2. Ama bimini	Mone bimini	Rege mini	Audie mini
3. Ama bantur	Mone bantur	Rege ntur	Audie ntur

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama tus sum	Moni tus sum	Rec tus sum	Audi tus sum
2. Ama tus es	Moni tus es	Rec tus es	Audi tus es
3. Ama tus est	Moni tus est	Rec tus est	Audi tus est

PLURAL.

1. Ama ti sumus	Moni ti sumus	Rec ti sumus	Audi ti sumus
2. Ama ti estis	Moni ti estis	Rec ti estis	Audi ti estis
3. Ama ti sunt	Moni ti sunt	Rec ti sunt	Audi ti sunt

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama tus eram	Moni tus eram	Rec tus eram	Audi tus eram
2. Ama tus eras	Moni tus eras	Rec tus eras	Audi tus eras
3. Ama tus erat	Moni tus erat	Rec tus erat	Audi tus erat

PLURAL.

1. Ama ti eramus	Moni ti eramus	Rec ti eramus	Audi ti eramus
2. Ama ti eratis	Moni ti eratis	Rec ti eratis	Audi ti eratis
3. Ama ti erant	Moni ti erant	Rec ti erant	Audi ti erant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama tus ero	Moni tus ero	Rec tus ero	Audi tus ero
2. Ama tus eris	Moni tus eris	Rec tus eris	Audi tus eris
3. Ama tus erit	Moni tus erit	Rec tus erit	Audi tus erit

PLURAL.

1. Ama ti erimus	Moni ti erimus	Rec ti erimus	Audi ti erimus
2. Ama ti eritis	Moni ti eritis	Rec ti eritis	Audi ti eritis
3. Ama ti erunt	Moni ti erunt	Rec ti erunt	Audi ti erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Am er	Mone ar	Reg ar	Audi ar
2. { Am eris { Am ere	{ Mone aris { Mone are	{ Reg aris { Reg are	{ Audi aris { Audi are
3. Am etur	Mone atur	Reg atur	Audi atur

PLURAL.

1. Am emur	Mone amur	Reg amur	Audi amur
2. Am emini	Mone amini	Reg amini	Audi amini
3. Am entur	Mone antur	Reg antur	Audi antur

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama rer	Mone rer	Rege rer	Audi rer
2. { Ama reris { Ama rere	{ Mone reris { Mone rere	{ Rege reris { Rege rere	{ Audi reris { Audi rere
3. Ama retur	Mone retur	Rege retur	Audi retur

PLURAL.

1. Ama remur	Mone remur	Rege remur	Audi remur
2. Ama remini	Mone remini	Rege remini	Audi remini
3. Ama rentur	Mone rentur	Rege rentur	Audi rentur

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama tus sim	Moni tus sim	Rec tus sim	Audi tus sim
2. Ama tus sis	Moni tus sis	Rec tus sis	Audi tus sis
3. Ama tus sit	Moni tus sit	Rec tus sit	Audi tus sit

PLURAL.

1. Ama ti simus	Moni ti simus	Rec ti simus	Audi ti simus
2. Ama ti sitis	Moni ti sitis	Rec ti sitis	Audi ti sitis
3. Ama ti sint	Moni ti sint	Rec ti sint	Audi ti sint

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Ama tus essem	Moni tus essem	Rec tus essem	Audi tus essem
2. Ama tus esses	Moni tus esses	Rec tus esses	Audi tus esses
3. Ama tus esset	Moni tus esset	Rec tus esset	Audi tus esset

PLURAL.

1. Ama ti essemus	Moni ti essemus	Rec ti essemus	Audi ti essemus
2. Ama ti essetis	Moni ti essetis	Rec ti essetis	Audi ti essetis
3. Ama ti essent	Moni ti essent	Rec ti essent	Audi ti essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2. Am are	Mon ere	Reg ere	Aud ire

PLURAL.

2. Am amini	Mon emini	Reg imini	Aud imini

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

2. Am ator *you shall be loved*	Mon etor	Reg itor	Aud itor
3. Am ator *he shall be loved*	Mon etor	Reg itor	Aud itor

PLURAL.

3. Am antor *they shall be loved*	Mon entor	Reg untor	Aud iuntor

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Am ari	Mon eri	Reg i	Audi ri
Perf.	Ama tus esse	Moni tus esse	Rec tus esse	Audi tus esse
Fut.	Ama tum iri	Moni tum iri	Rec tum iri	Audi tum iri

PARTICIPLES.

Perf.	Ama tus	Moni tus	Rec tus	Audi tus
Fut.	Am andus	Mon endus	Reg endus	Audi endus

XIII. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

Principal Parts
{
1st Conj. Miror, mirari, miratus sum, *wonder*.
2nd Conj. Vereor, vereri, veritus sum, *fear*.
3rd Conj. Sequor, sequi, secutus sum, *follow*.
4th Conj. Blandior, blandiri, blanditus sum, *flatter*.
}

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Pers.,	Miror	Vereor	Sequor	Blandior
2. "	Miraris, or Vereris, or	Sequeris, or	Blandiris, or
	Mirare Verere	Sequere	Blandire
3. "	Miratur Veretur	Sequitur	Blanditur

PLURAL.

1. Pers.,	Miramur	Veremur	Sequimur	Blandimur
2. "	Miramini	Veremini	Sequimini	Blandimini
3. "	Mirantur	Verentur	Sequuntur	Blandiuntur

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Pers.,	Mirabar	Verebar	Sequebar	Blandiebar
2. "	Mirabaris, Verebaris, or	Sequebaris, or	Blandiebaris, or
	or Mirabare Verebare	Sequebare	Blandiebare
	&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

1. Pers.,	Mirabor	Verebor	Sequar	Blandiar
2. "	Miraberis, Vereberis, or	Sequeris, or	Blandieris, or
	or Mirabere Verebere	Sequere	Blandiere
3. "	Mirabitur Verebitur	Sequetur	Blandietur

PLURAL.

1. Pers.,	Mirabimur	Verebimur	Sequemur	Blandiemur
2. "	Mirabimini	Verebimini	Sequemini	Blandiemini
3. "	Mirabuntur	Verebuntur	Sequentur	Blandientur

PERFECT.

| Miratus sum | Veritus sum | Secutus sum | Blanditus sum |

PLUPERFECT.

| Miratus eram | Veritus eram | Secutus eram | Blanditus eram |

FUTURE-PERFECT.

| Miratus ero | Veritus ero | Secutus ero | Blanditus ero |

IMPERATIVE PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

| Mirare | Verēre | Sequére | Blandire |

PLURAL.

| Miramini | Veremini | Sequimini | Blandimini |

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Mirans, *admiring*	Verens	Sequens	Blandiens
Per.	Miratus, *having admired*	Veritus	Secutus	Blanditus
Fut.	Miraturus, *about to admire*	Veriturus	Secuturus	Blanditurus
	Mirandus, *about to be admired*	Verendus	Sequendus	Blandiendus

Note 1.—Deponents have a Perf. Part. Act., but with a passive form: as, Caesar locutus tacuit, *Caesar having spoken was silent.*

Note 2.—The following forms should be observed:

(*a*) The Pres. Part.:— Hortans, *advising;* verens, *fearing,* etc. (Act. in meaning).

(*b*) The Fut. Part.:— Hortaturus, *about to advise;* veriturus, *about to fear,* etc. (Act. in meaning).

(*c*) The Gerund and Gerundive:— Amandi, *of loving;* verendi, *of fearing,* etc. Amandus, *to be loved;* verendus, *to be feared,* etc.

XIV. VERBS OF THE III CONJUGATION IN -IO.

Some verbs in -io of the III Conj. have a distinctive form in the Pres. Ind. and drop the i before -ĕr. Thus:

CONJUGATION OF CAPIO.

Principal Parts: Capio, capĕre, cepi, captum, *take*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

| | ACTIVE. | | PASSIVE. | |

PRESENT.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers.,	Capio	Capimus	Capior	Capimur
			Caperis, or	
2. "	Capis	Capitis	Capere	Capimini
3. "	Capit	Capiunt	Capitur	Capiuntur

IMPERFECT.

Capiebam	Capiebar

FUTURE.

1. Pers.,	Capiam	Capiemus	Capiar	Capiemur
			Capieris, or	
2. "	Capies	Capietis	Capiere	Capiemini
3. "	Capiet	Capient	Capietur	Capientur

PERFECT.

Cepi	Captus sum

PLUPERFECT.

Ceperam	Captus eram

FUTURE-PERFECT.

Cepero	Captus ero

SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.

Capiam	Capiar

IMPERFECT.

Capĕrem	Caperer

Perf. and Pluperf. are regular.

IMPERATIVE.

2. Pers., Cape	Capite	Capere	Capimini

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Capere	Capi
Perf. Cepisse	Captum esse
Fut. Capturus esse	Captum iri

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Capiens   *Fut.* Capturus   *Perf.* Captus   *Fut.* Capiendus

XV. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Sum, *I am.* Possum, *I am able.* Prosum, *I benefit.*

Principal parts
Sum	Fui	Esse
Possum	Potui	Posse
Prosum	Profui	Prodesse

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Sum	Possum	Prosum
2. Es	Potes	Prodes
3. Est	Potest	Prodest

PLURAL.

1. Sumus	Possumus	Prosumus
2. Estis	Potestis	Prodestis
3. Sunt	Possunt	Prosunt

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Eram	Poteram	Proderam
2. Eras	Poteras	Proderas
3. Erat	Poterat	Proderat

PLURAL.

1. Eramus	Poteramus	Proderamus
2. Eratis	Poteratis	Proderatis
3. Erant	Poterant	Proderant

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

1. Ero	Potero	Prodero
2. Eris	Poteris	Proderis
3. Erit	Poterit	Proderit

PLURAL.

1. Erimus	Poterimus	Proderimus
2. Eritis	Poteritis	Proderitis
3. Erunt	Poterunt	Proderunt

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Fui	Potui	Profui
2. Fuisti	Potuisti	Profuisti
&c.	&c.	&c.

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Fueram	Potueram	Profueram
2. Fueras	Potueras	Profueras
&c.	&c.	&c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Fuero	Potuero	Profuero
2. Fueris	Potueris	Profueris
&c.	&c.	&c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Sim	Possim	Prosim
2. Sis	Possis	Prosis
3. Sit	Possit	Prosit

PLURAL.

1. Simus	Possimus	Prosimus
2. Sitis	Possitis	Prositis
3. Sint	Possint	Prosint

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Essem	Possem	Prodessem
2. Esses	Posses	Prodesses
&c.	&c.	&c.

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Fuerim	Potuerim	Profuerim
2. Fueris	Potueris	Profueris
&c.	&c.	&c.

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Fuissem	Potuissem	Profuissem
2. Fuisses	Potuisses	Profuisses
&c.	&c.	&c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2. Es	None	Prodes

PLURAL.

2. Este	None	Prodeste

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

2. Esto, *thou shall be*	None	Prodesto
3. Esto, *he shall be*	None	Prodesto

PLURAL.

2. Estote, *ye shall be*	None	Prodestote
3. Sunto, *they shall be*	None	Prosunto

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Esse	Posse	Prodesse
Perfect. Fuisse	Potuisse	Profuisse
Future. Futurus esse	—	Profuturus esse

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	Potens	—
Future. Futurus, -a, um		Profuturus, -a, -um

PRETERITIVE VERBS.

Memini	Meminisse	*I remember*
Coepi	Coepisse	*I begin,* or *I began*
Odi	Odisse	*I hate*
Novi	Novisse	*I know*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect. Memini, -isti, etc.	Coepi	Odi	Novi
Pluperf. Memineram, -eras, etc.	Coeperam	Oderam	Noveram
Fut. Pf. Meminero, -eris, etc.	Coepero	Odero	Novero

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perfect. Meminerim, -eris	Coeperim	Oderim	Noverim
Pluperf. Meminissem, -isses	Coepissem	Odissem	Novissem

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Memento   Mementote

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Perf. Meminisse	Coepisse	Odisse	Novisse
Fut. Wanting	Coepturus esse	Osurus esse	Wanting

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. *Pass.* } Wanting	Coeptus	Osus	Notus
Fut. *Act.* } Wanting	Coepturus	Osurus	Wanting

IRREGULAR VERBS—VOLO, NOLO, MALO.

Principal Parts $\begin{cases} \text{Volo} & \text{Velle} & \text{Volui} & \textit{I wish, I am willing} \\ \text{Nolo} & \text{Nolle} & \text{Nolui} & \textit{I am unwilling} \\ \text{Malo} & \text{Malle} & \text{Malui} & \textit{I prefer} \end{cases}$

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Volo	Nolo	Malo
2. Vis	Non vis	Mavis
3. Vult	Non vult	Mavult

PLURAL.

1. Volŭmus	Nolŭmus	Malumus
2. Vultis	Non vultis	Mavultis
3. Volunt	Nolunt	Malunt

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Volebam	Nolebam	Malebam
2. Volebas	Nolebas	Malebas
&c.	&c.	&c.

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

1. Volam	Nolam	Malam
2. Voles	Noles	Males
3. Volet	Nolet	Malet

PLURAL.

1. Volemus	Nolemus	Malemus
2. Voletis	Noletis	Maletis
3. Volent	Nolent	Malent

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Volui	Nolui	Malui
&c.	&c.	&c.

PLUPERFECT.

1. Volueram	Nolueram	Malueram
&c.	&c.	&c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. Voluero	Noluero	Maluero
&c.	&c.	&c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. Velim	Nolim	Malim
2. Velis	Nolis	Malis
3. Velit	Nolit	Malit

PLURAL.

1. Velimus	Nolimus	Malimus
2. Velitis	Nolitis	Malitis
3. Velint	Nolint	Malint

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Vellem	Nollem	Mallem
2. Velles	Nolles	Malles
&c.	&c.	&c.

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. Voluerim	Noluerim	Maluerim
&c.	&c.	&c.

PLUPERFECT.

1. Voluissem	Noluissem	Maluissem

IMPERATIVE MOOD.
PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

2. None	Noli	None

PLURAL.

2. None	Nolite	None

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Velle	Nolle	Malle
Perf. Voluisse	Noluisse	Maluisse

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Volens (used as an Adj. Nolens (used as an Adj. None.
    willing)   *unwilling*)

Fero, *I carry*

Principal Parts—Fero, ferre, tuli, latum

PRESENT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.

SINGULAR.

1. Fero	Feram	Feror	Ferar
		Ferris	Feraris
2. Fers	Feras	Ferre	Ferare
3. Fert	Ferat	Fertur	Feratur

PLURAL.

1. Ferimus	Feramus	Ferimur	Feramur
2. Fertis	Feratis	Ferimini	Feramini
3. Ferunt	Ferant	Feruntur	Ferantur

IMPERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.

SINGULAR.

1. Ferebam	Ferrem	Ferebar	Ferrer
		Ferebaris	Ferreris
2. Ferebas	Ferres	Ferebare	Ferrere
3. Ferebat	Ferret	Ferebatur	Ferretur

PLURAL.

1. Ferebamus	Ferremus	Ferebamur	Ferremur
2. Ferebatis	Ferretis	Ferebamini	Ferremini
3. Ferebant	Ferrent	Ferebantur	Ferrentur

FUTURE.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
INDIC.	INDIC.
	SINGULAR.
1. Feram	Ferar
	Ferēris or
2. Feres	Ferere
&c.	&c.

PERFECT.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	
1. Tuli	Tulerim	Latus sum	Latus sim	
&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.	

PLUPERFECT.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
1. Tuleram	Tulissem	Latus eram	Latus essem

FUTURE PERFECT.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
INDIC.	INDIC.
	SINGULAR.
1. Tulero	Latus ero
&c.	&c.

IMPERATIVE.
PRESENT.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
	SINGULAR.
2. Fer	Ferre
	PLURAL.
2. Ferte	Ferimini

4

FUTURE.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.

SINGULAR.

2. Ferto, *you shall carry*	Fertor
3. Ferto, *he shall carry*	Fertor

PLURAL.

2. Fertote, *ye shall carry*	Wanting
3. Ferunto, *they shall carry*	Feruntor

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Ferre	Ferri
Perf. Tulisse	Latus esse
Fut. Laturus esse	Latum iri

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Ferens	Wanting
Perf. Wanting	Latus, -a, -um
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um	Fer endus, -a, -um

SUPINE.

Latum	Latu

Fio, *I become*
Principal Parts—Fio, fieri, factus sum

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.

SINGULAR.

1. Fio	Fiam	Factus sum	Factus sim
2. Fis	Fias	Factus es	Factus sis
3. Fit	Fiat	Factus est	Factus sit

PLURAL.

1. Fimus	Fiamus	Facti sumus	Facti simus
2. Fitis	Fiatis	Facti estis	Facti sitis
3. Fiunt	Fiant	Facti sunt	Facti sint

	IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.

SINGULAR.

| 1. Fiebam | Fierem | Factus eram | Factus essem |
| &c. | &c. | &c. | &c. |

	FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
1. Fiam		Factus ero
2. Fies		Factus eris
&c.		&c.

IMPERATIVE.

Fi   Fite

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fieri   *Perf.* Factus esse   *Fut.* Factum iri

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Factus, -a, -um   *Fut.* Faciendus, -a, -um

SUPINE.
Factum.

N.B.—The compounds of facio, when the facio changes into ficio, form their Passive thus:

Conficior (from conficio, *finish*), confici, confectus sum. But: Patefio, -fieri, -factus sum, *be laid open* (from patefacio).

Eo, *I go*

Principal Parts—Eo, ire, ivi *or* ii, itum

	PRESENT.		PERFECT.
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
1. Eo	Eam	Ivi *or* ii	Iverim *or* Ierim
2. Is	Eas	&c.	&c.
3. It	Eat		
1. Imus	Eamus		
2. Itis	Eatis		
3. Eunt	Eant		

	IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.
Ibam	Irem	Iveram *or* Ieram	Ivissem *or* Iissem
&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.

FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
1. Ibo	Ivero *or* Iero
2. Ibis	Iveris *or* Ieris
&c.	&c.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2. I	2. Ite

FUTURE.

2. Ito	2. Itote
3. Ito	3. Eunto

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
Pres. Ire	*Pres. Act.* Iens (Gen. euntis)
Perf. Ivisse *or* Iisse	*Fut. Act.* Iturus
Fut. Iturus esse	*Fut. Pass.* Eundus

SUPINES.

Active. Itum	*Passive.* Itu

XVI. LIST OF COMMON IRREGULAR VERBS.

Ab-icio (IACIO), -ere, ieci, -iectum, *throw away*

Ab-ripio (RAPIO), -ere, ripui, -reptum, *tear away*

Ac-cido (CADO), ěre, -cidi, *happen*

Ac-cipio (CAPIO), -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, *accept*

Ad-imo (EMO), -ere, -emi, -emptum, *take away*

Ad-iuvo, -are, -iuvi, -iutum, *help*

Ad-orior, -oriri, -ortus sum, *spring up*

Ad-fero, -ferre, at-tuli, al-latum, *carry to*

Af-ficio (FACIO), ere, -feci, -fectum, *affect*

A-gnosco ((G)NOSCO), -ere, a-gnovi, a-gnitum (agnoturus), *recognise*

Ago, -ere, egi, actum, *drive*

Alo, -ere, alui, altum, *nourish*

A-perio, -ire, aperui, apertum, *open*

A-scendo (SCANDO), -ere, -i, -scensum, *ascend*

A-spicio, ere, -spexi, -spectum, *behold*

Audeo, -ere, ausus sum, *dare*

Audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum,

Au-fero, -ferre, abs-tuli, ablatum, *take away*

Bibo, -ere, bibi, *drink*

Cado, -ere, cecidi, casum, *fall*

Caedo, -ere, cecidi, caesum, *fell*

Capio, -ere, cepi, captum, *take*

Compounds like accipio

Cedo, -ere, cessi, cessum, *go*

Circum-do, dare, -dedi, -datum, *surround*

Claudo, -ere, clausi, clausum, *shut*

Compounds like includo

Co-gnosco, -ere, -gnovi, -gnitum, *ascertain*

Co-go (AGO), -ere, coegi, coactum, *compel*

Col-ligo (LEGO), -ere, -legi, -lectum, *collect*

Com-perio (PARIO), -ire, comperi, compertum, *ascertain*

Com-plector, -i, complexus, *embrace*

Compleo, -ēre, -evi, -etum, *fill*

Com-primo (PREMO), -ere, -pressi, -pressum, *compress*
Con-icio (IACIO), -ere, -ieci, iectum, *hurl*
Con-sīdo, -ere, consedi, consessum, *settle*
Con-sisto, -ere, constĭti, constitum, *halt*
Con-spicio, -ere, -spexi, spectum, *behold*
Con-stituo, -ere, -ui, -stitutum, *resolve*
Con-suesco, -ere, -suevi, -suetum, *be accustomed*
Con-sulo, -ere, consului, -sultum, *consult*
Con-temno, -ere, -tempsi, -temptum, *despise*
Con-tendo, ere, -tendi, -tentum, *hasten*
Con-valesco, -ere, -valui, *recover*
Credo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *believe*
Cresco, -ere, crevi, cretum, *grow*
Cupio, -ere, cupivi, cupĭtum, *desire*
Curro, -ere, cucurri, cursum, *run*

Dēdo, -ere, dedidi, deditum, *surrender*
De-icio (IACIO), -ere, ieci, -iectum, *throw down*
De-fendo, -ere, -fendi, fensum, *defend*
Deleo, -ēre, delevi, deletum, *destroy*
De-scendo (SCANDO), -ere, -scendi, -scensum, *descend*
De-sero, -ere, -serui, -sertum, *desert*
De-silio (SĂLIO), -ire, -ui, *leap down*
De-sino, -ere, desii or desivi, desĭtum, *cease*
De-sisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, *desist*
De-spicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, *despise*
Dico, -ere, dixi, dictum, *say*
Di-gredior (GRADĬOR), -i, -gressus sum, *go apart*
Di-ligo, -ere, -lexi, -lectum, *love*
  But: Deligo, ĕre, legi, lectum, *pick*
Disco, -ere, didici, *learn*
Divido, ere, divisi, divisum, *divide*
Do, dare, dedi, datum, *give*
Doceo, -ere, docui, doctum, *teach*
Duco, -ere, duxi, ductum, *lead*

E-ligo (LEGO), -ere, -legi, -lectum, *pick out*
Emo, -ere, emi, emptum, *take, buy*
Eo, ire, ivi (ii), itum, *go*

Ex-pello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, *drive out*
Expergiscor, -i, experrectus sum, *awake*
Ex-perior, -iri, -pertus sum, *try*
Ex-stinguo, -ere, stinxi, -stinctum, *extinguish*

Facio, -ere, feci, factum, *make*
        Compounds like afficio
Fallo, -ere, fefelli, falsum, *deceive*
Fateor, -eri, fassus sum, *confess*
Ferio, -ire, percussi, percussum, *strike*
Fero, ferre, tuli, latum, *bear*
Figo, -ere, fixi, fixum, *fix*
Fingo, -ere, finxi, fictum, *fashion*
Fio, fieri, factus sum, *be made, become*
Fleo, -ere, flevi, fletum, *weep*
Fluo, -ere, fluxi, xum, *flow*
Frango, -ere, fregi, fractum, *break*
Fruor, -i, fructus sum, *enjoy*
Fugio, -ere, fugi, *flee*

Gaudeo, -ere, gavisus sum, *rejoice*
Gero, -ere, gessi, gestum, *wage*
Gigno, -ere, genui, genitum, *beget*
Gradior, -i, gressus sum, *step*
        Compounds like digredior

Iacio, -ere, ieci, iactum, *throw*
        Compounds like abicio
I-gnosco, -ere, -gnovi, gnotum, *pardon*
In-cendo, -ere, -cendi, -censum, *kindle*
In-cludo (CLAUDO), -ere, -clusi, clusum, *shut in*
Intel-lego, -ere, -lexi, -lectum, *pick up*
Irascor, -i, -iratus sum, *be angry*
Iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussum, *order*
Iungo, -ere, iunxi, iunctum, *join*

Labor, -i, lapsus sum, *glide*
Laedo, -ere, laesi, laesum, *harm*

Lavo, -are, lavi, lautum, *wash*
Lego, -ere, legi, lectum, *pick*
Loquor, -i, locutus sum, *speak*

Malo, malle, malui, *prefer*
Maneo, -ere, mansi, mansum, *remain*
Metuo, -ere, metui, *fear*
Mico, -are, -ui, *flash*
Misereor, eri, ertus or eritus sum, *pity*
Mitto, -ere, misi, missum, *send*
Morior, mori, mortuus sum (moriturus), *die*
Moveo, -ere, movi, motum, *move*

Nanciscor, -i, nactus, *get*
Nascor, -i, natus sum, *be born*
Neg-ligo, -ere, lexi, -lectum, *neglect*
Nolo, nolle, nolui, *be unwilling*
Nosco, -ere, novi, notum, *know*
Nubo, -ere, nupsi, nuptum, *wed*

Obliviscor, -i, oblitus sum, *forget*
Ob-sideo (SEDEO), -ere, sedi, sessum, *besiege*
Ob-sto, -stare, stiti (obstaturus), *oppose*
Oc-cido (CADO), -ere, -cidi, -casum, *fall*
Oc-cido (CAEDO), -ere, -cidi, -cisum, *fell*
Of-fero, of-ferre, obtuli, oblatum, *offer*
Orior, -iri, ortus sum (oriturus), *rise*
Os-tendo, -ere, -tendi, -tensum, *show*

Parco, -ere, peperci, *spare*
Pasco, -ere, pavi, pastum, *feed*
Pate-facio, -ere, -feci, -factum, *lay open*
Patior, -i, passus sum, *suffer, allow*
Pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsum, *drive*
Per-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *destroy*
Per-eo, -ire, perii, -itum, *perish*
Pergo (REGO), -ere, perrexi, perrectum, *go on*
Per-petior (PATIOR), -i, perpessus sum, *endure*

Peto, -ere, -ivi (-ii), -itum, *seek*
Pono, -ere, posui, positum, *place*
Posco, -ere, poposci, *demand*
Pos-sum, posse, potui, *be able*
Premo, -ere, pressi, pressum, *press*
      Compounds like comprimo
Pro-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *betray*
Proficiscor, -i, profectus sum, *set out*

Quaero, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitum, *seek*
Queror, queri, questus sum, *complain*
Quiesco, -ere, quievi, quietum, *rest*

Rapio, -ere, rapui, raptum, *snatch*
      Compounds like abripio
Re-cumbo, -ere, -cubui, *recline*
Red-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *give back*
Re-icio (IACIO), -ere, -ieci, -iectum, *throw back*
Re-linquo, -ere, -liqui, -lictum, *leave*
Re-perio, -ire, repperi, repertum, *find*
Re-sisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, *resist*
Re-spondeo, -ere, -spondi, -sponsum, *answer*
Rideo, -ere, risi, risum, *laugh*
Rumpo, -ere, rupi, ruptum, *break*

Scindo, -ere, scidi, scissum, *cut*
Scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptum, *write*
Sedeo, -ere, sedi, sessum, *sit*
Sentio, -ire, sensi, sensum, *feel*
Sequor, -i, secutus sum, *follow*
Soleo, -ere, solitus sum, *be accustomed*
Solvo, -ere, solvi, solutum, *loose*
Statuo, -ere, statui, statutum, *place, resolve*
      Compounds like constituo
Sto, stare, steti, statum, *stand*
      Compounds like obsto
Stringo, -ere, strinxi, strictum, *draw tight, graze*
Suadeo, -ere, suasi, suasum, *recommend*
Sumo (EMO), -ere, sumpsi, sumptum, *take*

Surgo (REGO), -ere, surrexi, surrectum, *rise*
Sus-tineo (TENEO), -ere, tinui, -tentum, *hold up*

Tango, -ere, tetigi, tactum, *touch*
Teneo, -ere, tenui, tentum, *hold*
        Compounds like sustineo
Ting(u)o, -ere, tinxi, tinctum, *steep*
Tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublatum, *raise*
Trado, -didi, ditum, *give up*
Traho, -ere, traxi, tractum, *draw*

Ulciscor, -i, ultus sum, *avenge (wrongs)*
Utor, -i, usus sum, *use*

Veho, -ere, vexi, vectum, *carry*
Vello, -ere, velli, vulsum, *pluck*
Ven-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *sell*
Venio, -ire, veni, ventum, *come*
Verto, -ere, verti, versum, *turn*
Veto, -are, vetui, vetitum, *forbid*
Video, -ere, vidi, visum, *see*
Vincio, -ire, vinxi, vinctum, *bind*
Vinco, -ere, vici, victum, *conquer*
Viso, -ere, visi, visum, *visit*
Vivo, -ere, vixi, victum, *live*
Volo, velle, volui, *wish*
Voveo, -ere, vovi, votum, *vow*

XVII. THE PREPOSITION.

Prepositions in Latin govern (with very few exceptions) either the Accusative or the Ablative, or both.

Prepositions with Accusative and Ablative.

In, sub (subter), and super.

Thus: In urbe, *in the city* (rest); in urbem, *into the city* (motion). Sub muro, *under the wall;* sub murum, *up under the wall.* Super eo pendet, *it hangs over him;* super eum volat, *it flies over him* (motion).

Prepositions with the Ablative.

A (or ab), *from, by;* coram, *in presence of;* cum, *with;* de, *from, concerning;* e (ex), *out of;* prae, *in consequence of;* pro, *on behalf of;* sine, *without;* tenus, *up to* (written after its case).

Prepositions with the Accusative.

Ad, *towards, for the purpose of;* adversus, *against;* ante, *before;* apud, *beside;* circum (or circa), *round;* cis (or citra), *on this side of;* trans, *across;* contra, *against;* erga, *towards;* extra, *outside of;* inter, *among;* infra, *below;* intra, *within;* iuxta, *near;* ob, *on account of;* penes, *in the power of;* per, *through;* post, *behind;* praeter, *past;* prope, *near to,* propter, *close to, on account of;* secundum, *along, behind;* versus, *towards* (written after its case); ultra, *beyond.*

XVIII. PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES.

A or ab (*from, by*).

A fronte, *in front;* a senatu stat, *he stands on the side of the Senate;* a re frumentaria laborare, *to suffer with regard to supplies;* contestim a proelio, *immediately after the battle.*

Ad (*to*).

Ad ludos pecunia decernitur, *money is voted for the games;* ad fortunam felix, *fortunate, in point of fortune;* ad Cannas, *near Cannae;* ad Siciliam, *off Sicily;* ad aliorum arbitrium, *at the beck of others;* omnes ad unum, *all to a man.*

Apud (*beside*).

Apud forum, *near the forum;* apud me, *in my house;* apud me plus valet, *he has more influence with me;* apud Terentium, *in the writings of Terence.*

Cum (*with*).

Cum gladio, *sword in hand;* confer hanc pacem cum illo bello, *compare this peace with that war.*

De (*from, about*).

De industria, *on purpose;* bene mereri de patria, *deserve well of one's country.*

E or ex (*out of*).

Ex consulatu, *immediately after his consulship;* ex itinere, *while on the march;* ex improviso, *unexpectedly;* ex foedere, *in accordance with the treaty;* ex sententia, *satisfactorily;* ex parte magna, *in a great measure.*

In (*in or into*).

In equo, *on horseback;* in barbaris, *among barbarians;* in bonis ducere, *reckon among blessings;* pietas in deos, *piety to the gods;* pecunia in rem militarem data, *money given for military purposes;* in rem tuam hoc est, *this is for your interest;* in dies, *every day;* in horas, *every hour;* denarius in singulos modios, *a denarius for every bushel;* in posterum diem, *for the next day.*

Inter (*between, among*).

Inter me et te hoc interest, *there is this difference between you and me.*

Per (*through*).

Per speculatores, *by means of spies* (secondary agent); per me, *through my instrumentality;* digladientur per me licet, *they may fight it out, as far as I am concerned.*

Praeter (*past, except*).

Praeter modum, *beyond measure;* decem praeter se, *ten besides themselves;* omnes praeter unum, *all except one.*

Pro (*instead of, in behalf of*).

Pro occiso relictus, *left for dead;* pro meritis gratias agere, *to thank for services;* pro multitudine hominum, fines angustos habent, *considering their population, they have limited territory;* proelium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium editur, *a battle is fought fiercer than might have been expected from the number of combatants.*

Sub (*under, up to*).

Sub nostram aciem successerunt, *they came right up to our line;* quae sub sensus sunt, *what is within the range of the senses;* sub haec dicta omnes procubuerunt, *after these words all prostrated themselves;* sub ipsā profectione, *at the very start;* sub noctem, *at night-fall.*

Exercise on the Preposition.

1. Next day he descends from the mountain and pitches his camp beside the river. 2. Oh (*utinam*) that he had not led us towards Rome! 3. This done, he threw himself upon (*in*) his sword. 4. Are we never to know in whose hands (use *penes*) the decision is? 5. Tell me when you intend to speak to him about (*de*) it. 6. Do not speak in his behalf. 7. You will have the greatest influence with him. 8. They halted when they came within the cast of a spear. 9. Is there not a race that dwells beneath the earth? 10. After so many battles are they still alive? 11. You have come here after the manner of (*in modum*) fugitives. 12. Does not the art of writing exist (*sum*) with a view to (*ad*) writing? 13. It is a scandalous (*turpis*) thing to take money for (*ob*) such a reason. 14. Do you think they love each other? (use *inter se*).

PART II.

LATIN SYNTAX.

PART II—LATIN SYNTAX.

§ 1. THE NOMINATIVE.

1. A noun joined to the Subject by the verb *to be* (*esse*) is in the Nominative: as,

Ira furor brevis est.   *Anger is a short madness.*

The verb *to be* is often omitted: as,

Paucorum improbitas calamitas omnium.   *The unrighteousness of the few is the disaster of all.*

2. A noun is also joined in the Nominative to the Subject by the following verbs: Videri, *to seem;* nasci, *be born;* fieri, *to become;* creari, *to be appointed;* evadere, *to turn out;* dici, *to be said;* putari, *to be thought;* haberi, *to be considered,* appellari, *to be called;* deligi, *to be chosen:* as,

Nemo nascitur dives.   *No one is born a rich man.*

Ex oratore arator factus est.   *From a pleader he became a plough-man.*

Note.—Verbs like videor (*I seem*), nuntior (*I am reported*), putor (*I am thought*), and dicor, trador or feror (*I am said*), prefer the personal to the English impersonal use: as,

Dicitur ille rex fuisse.   *It is said that he was king* (lit., *He is said to have been king*).

Traditur Homerus caecus fuisse.   *It is related that Homer was blind* (lit., *Homer is related, etc.*).

The Nom. and not the Acc. is then used with the Inf.

3. Many verbs (called *modal verbs*) take an Inf. after them to complete their meaning: as, Audeo (*dare*), cogo (*compel*), conor (*endeavor*), constituo and statuo (*determine*), cunctor and dubito (*hesitate*), cupio (*desire*), debeo (*ought*), desino (*cease*), disco (*learn*), incipio (*begin*), malo (*prefer*), nescio (*not know how*), nolo (*be unwilling*), obliviscor (*forget*), patior (*allow*), paro (*prepare*), possum (*be able*), scio (*know how*), soleo (*be accustomed*), vereor (*fear*), volo (*be willing*): as,

Malo mori, *I prefer to die;* desine mirari, *cease to wonder.*

5

This infinitive is called a *complementary* Inf. and a noun or Adj. with the complementary Inf. (referring to the Subj. of the main verb) is in the Nom. and not in the Acc.: as,

Vult esse servus. *He wishes to be a slave.*

4. If a sentence has two or more subjects all of the third person, the verb as a rule agrees with the nearest: as,

Rex et regia classis protecta est. *The king and the royal fleet set out.*

Other forms, however, are common. Thus:

Uxor mea et filius mortui sunt. *My wife and son are dead* (verb plural, and participle agreeing with masculine rather than with feminine).

Nox et praeda hostes morata sunt. *Night and plunder delayed the enemy* (participle neuter, though both subjects are feminine. This is often the case when the subjects are names of things).

EXERCISE 1.

1. He was immediately appointed consul.   2. I wished to go alone.   3. No one can be happy without virtue.   4. The first ship was a hollowed (*cavo*) tree.   5. He wishes to visit (*adire*) those tribes (*natio*) himself (*ipse*).   6. He did not wish to be more foolish than he seemed.   7. Each man is the architect of his own fortune.   8. He (*ille*) is a good citizen who loves his country.   9. They wished both to be and to be considered friends.   10. He will never turn out a brave man.   11. They seemed to be free.   12. It is reported that the Gauls are at hand (say: The Gauls are reported to be).   13. It seems to me that the army has returned.   14. No one can be called a happy man before his death.   15. Hamilcar, the general of the Carthaginians, was considered a second (*alter*) Mars.   16. Only fools are fortunate (*felix*).   17. Dare to be wise.   18. It seems that they have conquered.   19. He did not fear to die.   20. Caesar was appointed dictator.   21. Office (*honor*), honor (*gloria*) and wealth are pleasing to most of us (*plerique.*)

§ 2. ACCUSATIVE AND VOCATIVE.

1. Verbs meaning *to ask, teach, conceal*, govern two accusatives, one of the person, another of the thing: as,

Me primum sententiam rogavit. *He asked me my opinion first.*

Quis te musicam docuit? *Who taught you music?*

Nihil nos celat. *He conceals nothing from us.*

When used passively, the Acc. of the person becomes the subject, and the Acc. of the thing is retained: as,

Filius musicam a patre doctus est. *The son was taught music by the father.*

Note.—Peto and quaero (*I ask*), posco and postulo (*I demand*) are usually followed by a or ab: as,

Pacem a Romanis petunt. *They are asking peace from the Romans.*

Causam a viro quaesivit. *He asked the man for a reason* (lit., *from the man*).

Librum ab amico postulavit. *He demanded a book from his friend.*

2. Verbs like creo and facio (*elect*), appello (*call*), habeo and duco (*consider*) take two Accs. in the Act.: as,

Eum consulem faciunt. *They are electing him consul.*

Nos fratres appellavit. *He called us brothers.*

In the Pass., of course, both Accs. become Nom.: as,

Is consul factus est. *He was elected consul.*

3. The Acc. is used, without a preposition, to express *extent of space* and *duration of time*: as,

Tria millia passuum progressi sunt. *They advanced three miles.*

Multos annos iam regnat. *He has been reigning now for many years.*

Note.—The Pres. is used for the English Perf. with adverbs of time extending up to the present.

4. The Acc. is used to express the limit of motion (place to which) with (*a*) names of towns and small islands, (*b*) domus and rus: as, Romam rediit, *he returned to Rome;* Cretam profectus est, *he set out for Crete;* domum brevi veniet, *he will come home soon;* rus abiit, *he has gone off to the country.*

With other nouns, a preposition is required: as, Abiit ad forum, *he went off to the forum;* in Africam venit, *he came to Africa.*

5. The Acc. (called the Acc. of Exclamation) is often used to express indignation or surprise: as,

O me miserum. *Wretched man that I am!*

6. The Vocative is not, as a usual thing, preceded by O: as,

Mihi crede, M. Antoni. *Believe me, Mark Antony.*

EXERCISE 2.

(*Note.—The numbers refer to the sections and paragraphs*).

1. Experience will teach you many things.   2. We will ask two magistrates from the people.   3. They made him consul gladly (*libenter*).   4. He will soon be made consul a second time.   5. They can teach us nothing.   6. She wished to go to Italy alone.   7. It is said, Quirites, that the bravest have been killed.   8. They came from far Asia to Ancona.   9. They did not hesitate to come home.   10. They will remain there three days.   11. You have asked me for too much, my friend.   12. They will never make him first magistrate again.   13. It was believed (l. 2 note) that he had suddenly crossed the river with all his army.   14. The wolf was never considered the best guardian of sheep.   15. What a fine guardian! (use *O* with Acc.).   16. It seemed that all the cities had fought against us.   17. They concealed the plot from Caesar.   18. The plot was concealed from Caesar (Acc. of thing).   19. The plain extended (*pateo*) three miles.   20. Leap down, soldiers.   21. We will not allow the eagle to be taken.

§ 3. POSSESSIVE AND PARTITIVE GEN., GEN. OF QUALITY, GEN. OF PRICE.

1. The genitive usually stands before the noun it governs and, if there is an Adj. with the noun, the Gen. stands between the two in order to give compactness to the phrase: as,

Pulchra regis filia.   *The beautiful daughter of the king.*

The Gen. is often used for an English Adj.: as, Corporis robur, *bodily strength;* regis exercitus, *the royal army.*

Note.—In phrases like ad Vestae (*to the temple of Vesta*), ad Apollinis (*to the temple of Apollo*), the governing noun templum or aedem is understood.

2. The Gen. is used with the verb Esse, *to be*, in the sense of *to belong to:* as,

Hic versus Plauti non est.   *This verse is not Plautus's.*

Summae est dementiae.   *It is the height of madness.*

This Gen. may often be translated by a noun like *part, mark, characteristic, duty,* etc.: as,

Stulti est in errore perseverare.   *It is the mark of a fool to persist in error.*

Note.—The possessive pronoun is used, however, instead of the Gen. of the personal: as, Tuum est parēre. *It is your business to obey* (not tui est).

3. The Gen. denotes, as in English, the *whole* of which a part is taken: as,

Magna exercitūs pars. *A great part of the army.*

This is called the partitive Gen. and is very widely used.

The governing word usually expresses *number* or *amount:* as, Multi vestrum, *many of you*, quid novi? *what news?* (lit., *what of new?*)

It is common after satis (*enough*), nimis (*too much*), parum (*too little*), nihil *nothing*, aliquid *some*, tantum *so much*, quantum (*how much*): as,

Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum. *Enough eloquence, too little wisdom.*

It is also found after adverbs of place: as,

Ubi gentium? *Where in the world?*

Eo stultitiae vēnit. *He has reached such a pitch of folly* (lit., *come thither of folly*).

Note.—Nostrum and vestrum (not nostri and vestri) are used with Partitives for *of us* and *of you:* as, Uterque nostrum, *each of us two*. But, Memor nostri fuit, *he was mindful of us.*

4. The Partitive Gen. must not be used in the following cases:

(a) To express the English *of*, where there is no partition implied: as, Nos omnes, *all of us*; tota Asia, *the whole of Asia*; nos trecenti vēnimus, *three hundred of us have come.*

(b) With an Adj. of the III Decl.: as, Nihil turpe, *nothing base* (not turpis.)

(c) After a preposition: as, Ad multam noctem, *to a late hour of the night* (not ad multum).

(d) If the governing word is in any case but the Nom. or Acc.: as, Tantā pecuniā, *at so much money* (not tanto pecuniae).

(e) After words like *top, bottom, middle*, etc., which are expressed by Adjs. in agreement: as, E summo monte, *from the top of the hill*; medio in foro, *in the middle of the forum*; ad imam quercum, *to the foot of the oak*; reliquae copiae, *the rest of the forces*; primum ver, *the beginning of spring*; in extremo libro, *at the end of the book.*

5. A noun in the Gen. is added to another to express a quality: as,

Vir summi ingenii. *A man of the highest ability.*

Note.—The Abl. is more commonly used, however, to express a quality: as,

Vir longis cruribus. *A man with long legs.*

Quantity and *amount* are expressed by this Gen.: as, Agger viginti pedum, *a mound of twenty feet;* puer decem annorum, *a boy of ten years.*

Neither the Gen. nor the Abl. of quality can be used without an Adj. Thus: *A man of courage,* vir fortis (or vir summae fortitudinis), not vir fortitudinis).

Note.—This Adj. is usually magnus, maximus, summus, tantus, eius (*his*).

6. The price at which a thing is bought, sold or valued is expressed by the Gen., when the price is stated indefinitely: as, Magni, *at a great price;* parvi, *at a small price;* tanti, *at so great a price;* quanti, *at how great a price;* pluris, *at a greater price;* minoris, *at a less price;* maximi or plurimi, *at the greatest price;* minimi, *at the least price;* flocci, *at a straw.*

Thus: Quanti id vendit? *At what price does he sell it?*

Minoris decumae venierunt. *The tithes sold at a lower figure* [veneo, *to be sold,* from venum, *to sale* (adverb)+eo, *to go*].

Note.—When the price is definitely stated it is expressed by the Abl.: as,

Emit domum duobus talentis et pluris. *He bought a house at two talents and more.*

EXERCISE 3.

1. This man was the bravest of all the soldiers. 2. It is the part of a good judge to obey the laws. 3. Two altars have been built in the middle of the city. 4. All of these cities will soon be taken by them. 5. The rich never seem to themselves to have too much money. 6. How much glory you have lost! 7. You can see stars from the bottom of a well. 8. They came at last to the top of the mountain. 9. There is much good and nothing mean in the man. 10. How much pleasure you will receive! 11. It is the duty of children to obey their parents (*dat.*). 12. This house belonged to the noblest of the citizens. 13. He has taught you, citizens, no good

as yet. 14. Nothing human is alien to *ab* him. 15. It was my
business to teach them something new. 16. Men of genius are rare.
17. At what price will the ship be sold? 18. I cannot teach you
everything *scienda*. 19. A useless thing is dear at a cent *(as, assis.)*.
20. It is great madness to believe that.

§ 4. GENITIVE CONTINUED. GEN. WITH ADJS. AND VERBS. GEN. WITH CAUSA.

1. Adjs. that express *plenty* and *want* or contain a *verbal notion*
are followed by the Gen.: as,

Plenus avium, *full of birds;* patiens laboris, *capable of labor;*
cupidus contentionis, *desirous of strife;* spei egens, *destitute of hope.*

Note 1.—A Pres. Part., when it loses all idea of time and simply
expresses a quality, governs the Gen.: as, Amans patriae, *devoted
to his country;* appetens gloriae, *desirous of glory.*

It is, in that case, compared like an ordinary Adj.

Note 2. Similis *like*, dissimilis *unlike*, and proprius *peculiar
to*, are followed by the Gen. and more rarely the Dat.: as, Similis
sui, *like himself;* virorum proprium, *peculiar to men.*

2. The following verbs take the Gen. instead of the Acc. of the
object: Misereor, *I pity*, obliviscor, *I forget*, and memini, *I remember:*
as,

Miserêre nostri.   *Pity us.*

Officii sui oblitus est.   *He forgot his duty.*

Huius diei semper meminero.   *I shall always remember this day.*

Note 1. Misreor *1st conjugation*, *to deplore*, takes the Acc.: as,
Nostrum casum miseratur.   *He deplores our misfortune.*

Note 2. Obliviscor, when used with neuter Pronouns or names of
common things, takes the Acc.: as,

Noli id oblivisci.   *Do not forget it.*

Totam causam oblitus est.   *He forgot the whole case.*

3. Verbs like admoneo *remind* take the Acc. of the person and
the Gen. of the thing: as,

Me beneficii sui admonebat.   *He reminded me of his kindness.*

4. Verbs like accuso (*accuse*), damno (*condemn*), and absolvo
(*acquit*) take the Acc. of the person and the Gen. of the thing: as,

Accusat me furti.   *He accuses me of theft.*

Repetundarum (rerum) damnatus est. *He was condemned for extortion* (lit., *things that should be recovered*).

Sacrilegii absolutus est. *She was acquitted of sacrilege.*

Note.—The *punishment*, after such verbs, is expressed by the Gen. or Abl.: as, Capitis (or capite) damnatus est. *He was condemned to death* (lit., *of* or *in his head*).

5. Verbs meaning *to reckon at* (like aestimo, facio) take the Gen. of indefinite and the Abl. of definite price: as,

Non eum magni aestimo. *I do not value him highly* (see § 3, 6).

Quanti id facit? Centum sestertiis.

At how much does he reckon it? At a hundred sesterces.

6. Causa (*for the sake of, on account of*) is used with the Gen.: as, Honoris tui causā huc vēnimus. *We have come here in your honor.*

But in phrases like *For my sake, for your sake*, etc., the possessive Adj. is used in agreement: as,

Vestrā causā nec alterīus ullīus haec loquor. "*I say this for your sake and not for that of anyone else.*

Note.—In this sense, causā usually follows the Gen.

Exercise 4.

1. All will remind you of your faults. 2. He seemed capable of command. 3. We shall never forget you. 4. They feared to accuse him of treason. 5. This city had always been most eager for revolution (*res novae*). 6. You forget nothing except (*nisi*) your wrongs. 7. They will be acquitted by all the judges. 8. Remember the deeds of your ancestors. 9. I shall never be able to forget him while I live. 10. A man like you reckons pleasure of no account (say: *at the least*). 11. These people were men of great courage. 12. Pity my father, judges, pity my son. They will do much for the sake of the country (*res publica*). 13. Do this for my sake, if not for your own (*tuus*). 14. It is the part of a fool to see the faults of others and forget his own. 15. It is said that all have gone home (1, 2, *note*). 16. No one wished to call Mithridates an unskilful (*imperitus*) general. 17. He has dared to ask us for more. 18. Oh, the impudence of the fellow! (§ 2, 5). 19. They will advance for five days. 19. He wished to go to the country; she preferred to go to the town. 20. He determined to sail to Sicily.

§ 5. INDIRECT NARRATION.   ACC. WITH INF.

1. Verbs like *I say*, *dico*, and *I think*, *puto*, are followed in English by a *that*-clause and in Latin by an Inf.: as,

Dicit vitam esse brevem.   *He says that life is short.*

Dixit vitam esse brevem.   *He said that life was short.*

The part of the sentence dependent upon the verb of *saying* or *thinking* is said to be in *indirect narration*.

The "direct" form would be: Vita brevis est, *life is short* and it should be noticed that the *tense* of the main verb of Latin "direct" does not change, as in English, after a past tense, in "indirect".

The subject of the Inf. is in the Acc. and the two together are called the *Acc. with the Inf.*

2. The following are examples of

<center>ACC. WITH INF.</center>

Dicit eam scribere.   *He says that she is writing* (direct: ea scribit, *she is writing*).

Dicit eam scripturam esse.   *He says that she will write* (direct: ea scribet, *she will write.*)

Dicit eam scripsisse (heri).   *He says that she wrote* (*yesterday*) (direct: ea scripsit heri, *she wrote yesterday*).

Dixit eam scribere.   *He said that she was writing* (direct: ea scribit, *she is writing*).

Dixit eam scripturam esse.   *He said that she would write* (direct: ea scribet, *she will write*).

Dixit eam scripsisse (heri).   *He said that she wrote* (*yesterday*) (direct: ea scripsit heri, *she wrote yesterday*).

N.B.—The tense of the Inf. in Latin "indirect" is in every case the tense of the main verb of the direct.

3. In Indirect Narration, the verb of a subordinate clause is in the Subjunctive: as,

This: Dicit se sua manu anulum, quem gerat, fecisse.   *He says that he made with his own hand the ring he is wearing.*

NOTE—To express *he*, *she*, *they*, referring to the subject of the verb of *saying* or *thinking*, *se* is used, and *suus* to express *his*, *her*, or *their*. In other cases, *He* is Is and *His* the Gen. of Is: as,

Dicit se ei parcere propter eius merita.   *He says that he is sparing him because of his services.*

EXERCISE 5.

1. They think that an opportunity is given to all.　2. They thought that an opportunity was given to all.　3. They say that an opportunity has been given.　4. They said that an opportunity had been given.　5. They thought that this man's ability was very great.　6. He said that office (*honos*) was always open in this city to the best men.　7. They think they are the best.　8. I say that he is reading.　9. I said that he was reading.　10. He knew that this country was cold in winter and hot in summer.　11. He thought that it was base to lie.　12. He knew that the days were longer here than with (*apud*) you.　13. He believed that the soul was immortal.　14. All expected that he would attack the city.　15. They knew that the multitude of the stars was great.　16. The general will praise his soldiers.　17. The queen also will praise her soldiers.　18. We will hurt (*laedo*) none of them.　19. He was two years in prison.　20. He will prefer to be considered a good citizen.

§ 6. THE DATIVE.

1. The Dative, as a rule, corresponds to the English *to* or *for*: as,

Modum pone irae.　*Set a limit to anger.*

Non mihi sed meis.　*Not for myself but for my friends.*

Da mihi aliquid.　*Give me something* (*me = to me*).

2. The Dat. is used with sum, *I am*, in the sense of *to belong to, to have:* as,

Est tibi liber.　*You have a book.*

Est tibi nomen Marcus.　*Your name is Marcus.*

Note.　Instead of the Nom. in the last example, the Dat. (Marco) or the Gen. (Marci) may be used.

3. The Dat. is used for the English *from*, after verbs meaning *to take away:* as,

Eam morti eripuit.　*He snatched her from death.*

4. The Dat. is often used where we should expect a possessive Gen.: as,

Pompeio ad pedes se proiecēre.　*They threw themselves at Pompey's feet.*

5. The Dat. is added to certain verbs (especially sum, do, habeo, venio, mitto) to express the *purpose* or design of the action of the verb: as,

Cui bono (usui) est?   *To whom is it useful?* (lit., *for a good*).

Hoc mihi culpae dedit.   *He set this down to me as a fault.*

Nobis auxilio venient.   *They will come to our aid* (lit., *for an aid to us*).

This is called the *Dat. of Purpose.*

6. Adjs. and Adverbs followed by *to* or *for* in English, are usually followed by the Dat. in Latin: as,

Utilis rei publicae.   *Useful to the country.*

Tibi facile, nobis difficile.   *Easy for you, difficult for us.*

Locus urbi propinquus.   *A place near to the city.*

Convenienter naturae vivit.   *He lives agreeably to nature.*

So too: Patri similis, *like his father;* tibi dissimilis, *unlike you.*

Note.—Propior and propius (*nearer*), proximus and proxime (*nearest*), may take the Acc.: as, Proximi Rhenum incolunt. *They dwell nearest the Rhine.*

Adjs. expressing *fitness* are followed by ad (with Acc.) rather than by a Dat.: as, Ad bellum aptus, *fit for war.* So too, natus (*born*), paratus (*ready*) and rudis (*inexperienced*).

Many Adjs. are followed by In, erga, or adversus, for the English *to:* as,

Acer in hostem, benignus erga amicos. *Fierce to the enemy, kind to friends.*

EXERCISE 6.

1. He will pay you the money.   2. They say that he is most unlike himself.   3. He used to say that the sea was a destruction to sailors.   4. Remain here for a protection to this city.   5. Their march was more like a rout.   6. You will not be able to take it away from him.   7. You will be a protection to us with your fleet.   8. I will give them as much credit (*laus*) as I take from them.   9. It is not in keeping with your moderation (§ 3, 2) to ask too much of us.   10. They were all most friendly to us.   11. These men seemed like gods to the barbarians.   12. He sent the cavalry to aid us.   13. It is very difficult for us.   14. None of us will ever forget his native land.   15. It is the part of a good man to pity the poor (*Gen.*).   16. He had

come into the sight of the enemy. 17. They have given him the name of crazy (*insanus*). 18. He says that the woman was condemned. 19. It is the proof of a good man to obey the laws. 20. He had learned to be brave.

§ 7. VERBS WITH DATIVE.

1. Sum, *I am*, and its compounds (except possum, *I am able*) are followed by the Dat.: as,

Est mihi liber. *I have a book.*

Amici non tibi desunt. *Friends are not lacking to you.*

Proelio interfuit. *He took part in the battle.*

So: Obsum (*injure*).

Supersum (*survive*).

Praesum (*be in charge*).

2. Most *impersonal* verbs are followed by the Dat.: as,

Mihi licet et expedit. *It is allowed me and expedient for me.*

So too: Libet (*it pleases*), accidit and contingit (*it happens*), liquet (*it is clear*), convēnit (*it is agreed* or *it suits*).

Convēnit mihi cum fratre ut...*It is agreed between my brother and myself that...*

Note.—Decet (*it is becoming*) and dedecet (*it is unbecoming*), however, take the Acc.: as,

Fac ut vos decet. *Act as becomes you.*

3. Verbs compounded with male, or satis, are followed by a Dat.: as,

Optimo viro maledixit. *He reviled a most excellent man.*

Mihi nunquam satisfecit. *He never satisfied me.*

4. Transitive verbs compounded with the prepositions Ad, ante con (for cum), in, inter, ob (*on, against*), post, prae (*before*), sub (*under*), super (*above*), often govern an Acc. of the direct and a Dat. of the indirect object: as,

Populus Romanus bellum Gallis intulit. *The Roman people made war on the Gauls.*

Note.—In the Pass. the direct object of the Act. becomes the subject, while the indirect object is retained: as,

Bellum Gallis illatum est. *War was made on the Gauls.*

5. Intransitive verbs compounded with the above-mentioned prepositions, often govern the Dat.: as,

Caesar exercitui praefuit. *Caesar commanded the army.*

Consiliis consulis obstat. *He opposes the plans of the consul.*

6. The following is a useful list of verbs (other than those mentioned) that govern the Dat.:

Credo, *believe*	Subvenio, *aid*
Fido and	Ignosco, *pardon*
Confido, *trust (in a person)*	Servio, *serve*
Faveo, *favor*	Invideo, *envy*
Pāreo, *obey*	Indulgeo, *indulge*
Nubo, *wed (of a woman)*	Placeo, *please*
Studeo, *am zealous*	Displiceo, *displease*
Obsto, *stand in the way*	Repugno, *oppose*
Impero, *command*	Immineo, *threaten*
Suadeo, *recommend*	Occurro, *meet*
Persuadeo, *persuade*	Resisto, *resist*
Irascor, *am angry*	Noceo, *hurt*
Tempero, *set bounds to*	Medeor, *heal*

7. The following verbs differ in meaning according as they govern the Dat. or Acc.:

Consulere aliquem. *Consult a person.*

Consulere alicui. *Consult a person's interest.*

Prospicere aliquid. *Foresee something.*

Prospicere alicui. *Provide for some one.*

Cavēre (aliquem). *Be on one's guard against.*

Cavere (alicui). *Consult interest of.*

Moderari (aliquem). *Govern (some one).*

Moderari (alicui rei). *Set limits to (something).*

8. The verbs dono (*give*) and circumdo (*surround*) have a double construction. Thus:

He surrounds the city with a wall. Urbem muro (abl.) circumdat, or Urbi murum circumdat.

They give him a crown. Eum coronā (abl.) donant, or Ei (dat.) coronam donant.

9. The following are idiomatic uses of the Dat. with verbs:

Mortem alicui minari. *To threaten a person with death.*

Pecuniam alicui imperare. *To demand money from a person* (lit., *order to*).

Aliquid alicui probare. *Justify a thing to a person.*

Aliquid alicui suppeditare. *To supply one with something.*

Hunc tibi antepono. *I prefer this man to you.*

Hunc tibi posthabeo. *I prefer you to this man* (lit., *I reckon this man after you*).

10. Verbs that govern a Dat. cannot be used personally in the Passive: they are still joined with a Dat. and used impersonally: as,

Nemini a te invidetur. *No one is envied by you.*

Dicit divitibus invideri. *He says that the rich are envied* (lit., *that it is envied to the rich*).

Ne illi quidem nocetur. *Not even he is injured.*

EXERCISE 7.

1. He fears for the safety of the country. 2. Everything threatens us with death. 3. He used to say that everything threatened us with death. 4. My consulship did not please Antonius. 5. It is not a mark of wisdom to revile men. 6. I will recommend that most excellent course (*res*) to him. 7. They could not be angry with those whom they love. 8. He says that he will consult us. 9. He cannot always consult his own interest. 10. He will prefer the safety of the country to everything. 11. No one was spared. 12. I believe that money has been demanded from almost (*paene*) all the states. 13. What (*quae*) pleases you, you do. 14. You will take away the power from the best of the citizens. 15. This peace will satisfy no one. 16. We cannot prefer him to you. 17. This one thing Caesar lacked. 18. He gave the soldiers one hundred oxen as a gift. 19. His word is at once obeyed. 20. You have heard that kings have long hands (*use Dat.*).

§ 8. FINAL CLAUSES.   UT-CLAUSE FOR THE ENGLISH INF. OF PURPOSE.

1. To express *purpose*, Latin uses Ut with the Subjunctive: as,

Venio ut urbem videam. *I come that I may see the city* (or *to see the city*).

Vēni ut urbem vidērem. *I came that I might see the city* (or *to see the city*).

Note 1.—An Ut-clause of purpose is called a Final clause (finis, *an end or purpose*).

Note 2.—After the Impf., past Pf., and Plpf., the Impf. Subj. is used in the Final clause instead of the Pres.

2. In Negative Final clauses, Ne (not ut non) is used for *that not* or *lest*: as,

Ne occasionem amittat, eos progredi iubet. *That he may not lose the opportunity, he orders them to advance.*

3. When there is a Comparative in the Final clause, Quo is used instead of Ut: as,

Abibo quo tutior sim. *I will go away that I may be safer* (or *to be safer*).

4. The Final conjunction is often preceded by words like: Eo consilio, ea causa, idcirco, *on this account:* as,

Idcirco (eā causā) arbores serit, ut alteri prosit.

On this account he is planting trees, that he may benefit another (or *to benefit another*).

5. Instead of the Final clause, English (where possible) prefers the Inf., which is not used in Latin prose to express a purpose: as, Pugnat ut vincat. *He fights to conquer* (never Pugnat vincere).

Exercise 8.

(The Inf. of Purpose becomes a Final clause in Latin).

1. He will close the gate that you may not enter.   2. He closed the gate that we might not enter.   3. I am doing this that you may live more safely.   4. We have come here to defend your camp. 5. You are saying this to deceive me.   6. He has gone off to see his friends.   7. Trees are covered (*obduco*) with bark that they may be safer from the cold.   8. They sent the man to pay us the money. 9. I say this that you may not be angry.   10. It is said that, in order to be heard by their friends, they raised a shout.   11. We went ourselves lest we might be deceived.   12. We will follow the army to see the battle.   13. He hid himself in the wood, lest he might be sent into the city.   14. Live well that you may die with a tranquil mind.   15. To speak more truly, the thing is useless.   16. Mirrors have been invented (*invenio*) that man may know himself.   17. These

states all belonged to (3, 2) the Carthaginians. 18. He said that he had wealth enough. 19. He hastened to Rome that he might not lose the opportunity. 20. He can be called the father of philosophy.

§ 9. THE ABLATIVE. ABL. OF SEPARATION. CAUSE, MANNER, INSTRUMENT.

1. The Abl. without a preposition is used to express "*motion from*" with the names of towns and small islands: as,

Rōmā profectus, *having set out from Rome;* Cypro navigans, *sailing from Cyprus;* domo, rure abiit, *he has gone off from home, from the country.*

This is called the *Abl. of Separation.*

For other nouns, the preposition is required: as, De oppidis migrant: *they are moving from the towns;* ab Italia discessit, *he departed from Italy.*

Note.—After verbs expressing *figurative* motion, the preposition is also usually omitted: as, Oppugnatione desistunt, *they desist from the attack;* bello abstinuit, *he abstained from war;* civitatem dominatu liberavit, *he delivered the country from despotism.*

2. The Abl. without a preposition is used after Adjs. meaning *free from, in want of, sprung from* : as, Curā vacuus, *free from care;* parentibus orbus, *bereft of parents;* consulari familia ortus, *sprung from a consular family.*

3. The Abl. without a preposition is used to express *cause, manner,* or *instrument:* as,

Eum gladio interfecit. *He killed him with a sword.*

Summa celeritate venient. *They will come with the utmost speed.*

Neglegentiā punitur. *He is punished for carelessness.*

Note 1.—The *agent* after a passive verb, is usually expressed by a (or ab) with the Abl.—(ab before vowels and consonants, a before consonants only: as, Ab illis deserti sumus, *we have been deserted by them;* a (or ab) Caesare interfectus, *killed by Caesar.*

A *secondary agent* (one through whose instrumentality a thing is done) is expressed by per (with Acc.): as, Omnia haec per te facta sunt, *all this was done through your instrumentality.*

Note 2.—Cause is usually expressed by ob or propter (with Acc.), *on account of;* by causa or gratia (with Gen.), *for the sake of;* and, of a negative cause, by prae (with Abl.): as, Beatiores sunt propter

illam scientiam, *they are happy by reason of that knowledge;* hoc rei publicae causa facit, *he does it for the public interest,* prae lacrimis loqui non potuit, *he could not speak for tears.*

Note 3.—The *Abl. of manner* is not used unless there is an Adj. with the noun; otherwise the preposition cum (with Abl.) is used: as, Hoc summa diligentia feci, *I did it with the greatest care.* But, Hoc cum diligentia feci, *I did it with care.*

With the following common nouns, cum is omitted: Consilio (*from design*), casu (*by chance*), iure (*rightly*), iniuria (*wrongly*), iussu (*at the command of*), iniussu (*without the command of*).

4. The Abl. without a preposition is used to specify that in respect to which a statement is true: as,

Homines non re sed nomine. *Men not in fact but in name.*

This is called the *Abl. of Respect.*

5. The Abl. without a preposition is used to express *military accompaniment* or *attendant circumstance:* as,

Hoc praesidio profectus est. *With this force he set out* (only when with an Adj.).

Veneremur deos pura mente. *Let us worship the gods with a pure heart.*

In other cases With, when it means *together with*, is cum (+Abl.): as,

Cum fratre veni, *I came with my brother;* cum febri, *with a fever;* cum telo, *with a weapon.*

Note.—Cum, when used with a personal or relative pronoun, is written after its case: as, Pax vobiscum, *peace be with you.*

EXERCISE 9.

1. The letter was heard with great satisfaction (*laetitia*). 2. He won the goodwill of all by his character. 3. He was killed by his own soldiers. 4. All have perished either (*aut*) by the sword or by pestilence. 5. I will say, with your permission (*pace*) that he acted with honesty. 6. He will come to our aid with a large army. 7. Born of the noblest parents, he did not abstain from crime. 8. I have heard that he behaved (*se gero*) with the greatest kindness (*benevolentia*). 9. They could not hear him by reason of (*prae*) the clamor. 10. They say that he has been banished from Thebes (*Thebae*). 11. He could depart from Athens (*Athenae*) with a tranquil mind.

6

12. He came from Sicily to command (*praesum*) the fleet.   13. All commerce (*mercatura*) was exempt from taxation (*vectigalia*).   14. Freed from this fear, he will depart from Italy in peace.   15. He set out by ship from Brundisium.   16. You did this to deceive us.   17. I will not allow my soldiers to be oppressed by the weight of their arms.   18. They called out with a loud (*magnus*) voice that the battle was lost.   19. I ventured to remind him of his debt (*aes alienum*).   20. All the ships have sailed home.

§ 10.   ABL. OF COMPARISON.   ABL. OF DIFFERENCE. ABL. OF PRICE.   ABL. OF TIME.

1. Instead of Quam (*than*) after a comparative the Abl. is frequently found: as,

Patre melior est.   *He is better than his father.*

Note.—With a Rel. pronoun, the Abl. *must* be used, not quam: as,

Punicum Bellum quo nullum maius fuit.   *The Punic War than which none was greater.*

2. Plus and amplius (*more*) and minus (*less*), when joined with numerals, are indeclinable and do not affect the case of the word to which they are joined: as,

Plus quingenti capti sunt.   *More than five hundred were taken.*

Minus septingentos occiderunt.   *They killed less than 700.*

Plus tertia parte interfecta, se receperunt.   *More than a third part being slain, they retreated.*

Plus annum tecum vixit.   *He lived with you more than a year.*

3. Comparatives are often joined with spe, opinione, expectatione, iusto or aequo (*right*), solito (*usual*): as,

Serius spe omnium.   *Later than all hoped.*

Celerius opinione vēnit.   *He came sooner than was expected.*

Plus aequo.   *More than right.*

4. An Abl. is added to Comparatives to define the *Degree of Difference* as,

Multo me senior.   *Much older than I* (lit., *by much*).

So, too: Paulo ante, *a little before;* paulo post, *a little later.*

5. The English the . . . the with two comparatives (Anglo-Saxon instrumental case = by that . . . by that) is expressed by *Quanto . . . tanto* (*by how much . . . by so much*) or quo . . . eo (*by what . . . by that*), with two comparatives: as,

Quo quis melior est, eo beatior. *The better one is, the happier he is.*

6. *Price,* when stated *definitely,* and with a few words like Pretio, (*at a price*), auro (*for gold*), is expressed by the Abl.: as,

Unam orationem viginti talentis vendidit. *He sold one oration for twenty talents.*

So, too: Religionem pecuniā mutavit. *He changed his religion for money.*

7. *Time at which* (time when), and *time within which*, are expressed by the Abl. without a preposition: as,

Horā sextā, *at the sixth hour;* vere et aestate, *in spring and summer;* paucis diebus, *within a few days.*

Note 1.—The preposition In (with the Abl.) is used of time to express emphasis: as, In tempore, *at the right moment;* in aetate provecta, *in spite of advanced age.*

Note 2.—Words that do not strictly denote time, require a preposition: as, In bello, *in the war.* But, when an Adj. is added, the preposition is omitted: as, Bello Punico, *in the Punic War.*

8. The Abl., like the Gen., is used to express a *quality:* as, Vir summa virtute, *a man of the highest courage.*

It is never used without an Adj. Thus *A man of courage* is Vir virtute praeditus (*endowed*) or vir fortis.

9. The *Case Absolute* is in Latin the Abl. and not, as in English, the Nom.: as,

Urbe captā, copias reduxit. *The city taken, he led back his forces.*

EXERCISE 10.

1. She sold her husband's (*vir*) life·for gold.   2. Your house is larger than ours.   3. He is braver than I.   4. He used to say that nothing was sweeter than the light of truth.   5. He can (*possum*) be much happier than he ever was.   6. He has bought immortality with death.   7. The sun is many times (*use pars*) larger than the earth.   8. On the same night on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana was burnt.   9. They will destroy (*everto*) that city within the next (*hic*) three years.   10. They always built ships in time of peace.   11. The more you have, the better.   12. I believe that in appearance (*species*) the city is free.   13. He is an old man in body: he will never become old in mind.   14. They came here at

night; at dawn they departed. 15. He said that he would send the money within a few days. 16. The war finished (*Abl. Abs.*), I will return home. 17. He used to say that life had given nothing to men without great labor. 18. Learn to be content with little. 19. You will buy that at a small cost (*pretium*). 20. They advanced quickly in the hope of booty. 21. This victory has cost much blood (*consto* + *Abl.*).

§ 11. ABL. OF PLACE. LOCATIVE.

1. *At a place* (place where) was originally expressed by a separate case in -i (pl. -is). This case is called the *Locative;* it is seen in: Domi (*at home*), ruri (*in the country*), humi (*on the ground*), heri (*yesterday*).

2. To express *At* or *in a place*, when the noun is the *name of a town* or *small island*, the Locative takes the following forms: If the noun was of the I or II Decl. Sing., the Locative takes the form of the Gen.; if not, the form of the Abl.: as,

Romae (*at Rome*), Rhodi (*at Rhodes*), Tibure (*at Tibur*), Athenis (*at Athens*).

3. To express *At* or *in a place*, when the noun is not the name of a town or small island, In with the Abl. is used: as,

In urbe, *in the city;* in Italia, *in Italy.*

But, if there is an Adj. with the noun, the preposition is often omitted: as,

Media urbe, *in the middle of the city;* tota Italia, *in the whole of Italy.*

4. An Adj. cannot be joined to a noun in the Locative case. Thus:

Totā Corintho (not totius Corinthi). *In the whole of Corinth.*

The possessive Adj. may however be added to Domi: as,

Domi meae. *In my house.* But, Vetere domo, *in the old house.* So too, Domum meam, *to my house;* but Ad veterem domum, *to the old home.*

5. For phrases like *In the city of Rome*, the preposition is required: as,

In urbe Athenis diu habitabat. *He lived long in the city of Athens.* Antiochiae, in urbe opulentissima, moratus est. *He delayed in the wealthy city of Antioch.*

So, too: Ab Italia domo iit. *He went from his home in Italy.*

Ad urbem Romam legati missi sunt. *Ambassadors were sent to the city of Rome.*

Rhodum ad patrem venit. *He came to his father at Rhodes.*

6. *Motion along* is expressed by the Abl.: as,

Ibam forte Viā Sacrā. *I chanced to be going along the Via Sacra.*

TABLE OF COMMON USES OF THE ABL.

1. ABL. OF SEPARATION. Metu liberatus, *freed from fear* (figurative). Roma profectus, *having set out from Rome.*

2. ABL. OF INSTRUMENT. Gladio interfectus, *killed with the sword.*

3. ABL. OF MANNER. Summā diligentiā, *with the utmost care* (not often used without an Adj., cum celeritate, *with speed*).

4. ABL. OF SPECIFICATION. Homines non re sed nomine, *men not in fact but in name.*

5. ABL. OF CAUSE. Timore concidit, *he collapsed from fear* (prep. ob or propter more common).

6. ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. Anno senior, *older by a year.*

7. ABL. of QUALITY. Vir summo ingenio, *a man of the highest ability* (always with an Adj.).

8. ABL. OF PRICE. Regna vendit pecuniā, *he sells kingdoms for money.*

9. ABL. OF COMPARISON. Nihil est melius virtute, *nothing is better than virtue.*

10. ABL. OF PLACE. Media urbe, *in the middle of the city* (usually with an Adj.).

11. ABL. OF TIME. Postero die abiit, *next day he went off.* His decem diebus, *within the last ten days.*

12. ABL. OF ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCE. His ominibus proficiscere, *set out with these omens.*

13. ABL. ABSOLUTE. Deo volente, *God willing.*

EXERCISE 11.

1. He will spend (*ago*) his life in this city.   2. They said that he would soon come to Italy.   3. He preferred to live at Rhodes. 4. No place in the whole sea was safe.   5. The army will set out for its winter quarters (*hiberna*) in Gaul.   6. He said that you would never remain in his house.   7. He lived at first at Carthage and afterwards at Athens.   8. You will not find braver men than these in the whole of Italy.   9. He has come here from the camp at Aricia. 10. I believe he has studied in the learned city of Athens.   11. He was a man of great strength.   12. He set out from Rome where he had dwelt in the middle of the city.   13. Freed from the fear of war, the nation was able to drive all bad citizens from its borders. 14. He was thrown into prison by the tribune where he soon died of hunger.   15. Many things are more useful than money.   16. I do not think this thing dear at ten cents (*as, assis*).   17. That city was six miles away (use *absum*).   18. In three years I saw him twice. 19. I did the same things myself (when) consul.   20. Philosophy is the knowledge of things human and divine.   21. Both his father and mother were dead.

§ 12. ABLATIVE WITH VERBS AND ADJECTIVES.

1. The verbs Utor (*use*), fruor (*enjoy*), fungor (*perform*), potior (*get possession of*), vescor (*feed on*), dignor (*deem worthy*), govern the Abl.: as,

Viribus male utuntur.   *They make a bad use of their strength.*

Urbe potitus est.   *He got possession of the city.*

Note.—Potior often governs the Gen.: as, Rerum potitus, *when master of affairs.*

2. Careo (*be without*), egeo and indigeo (*need*), also govern the Abl.: as,

Sensu caret, *he is devoid of feeling.*   Pane eget, *he is in need of bread.*

Note.— Egeo and indigeo (*need*), govern also a Gen.: as, Pecuniae indiget, *he is in need of money.*

3. Opus est and usus est (*there is need*), take a Dat. of the *person* to whom and the Abl. of the *thing*: as,

Quid tibi opus est verbis?   *What need have you of words?*

So: Opus est consulto, properato. *There is need of deliberation, haste.*

4. The following verbs are also followed by an Abl.: Fido and confido *rely on*; glorior *boast of*; doleo *feel grief at*, gaudeo *delight in*): as,

Natura loci confidit. *He relies on the nature of the ground.*

Casu meo gaudent. *They feel joy at my disaster.*

Note 1.—These verbs may also take a neuter pronoun in the Acc.: as, Hoc gloriatur, *he makes this boast.*

Note 2.—Fido and confido take the Dat. of the *person*, but the Abl. of the *thing*: as, Non tibi se I exercitu meo confido, *I do not boast in you but in my army.*

5. The Abl. is used after the Adjs. Dignus (*worthy of*), indignus (*unworthy of*), fretus (*relying on*), praeditus (*endowed with*), contentus (*content with*) and plenus (*full of*): as,

Poena dignus, *worthy of punishment*; fretus praesidio tuo, *relying on your protection*; virtute praeditus, *endowed with courage*; plenus ira (or irae), *full of anger.*

EXERCISE 12.

1. He has filled the world with good things. 2. You do not know how (1, 3) to use a victory. 3. I shall perform an idle (*vanus*) office. 4. They used to live on milk. 5. I believe that he performed the duties of his office with fidelity and courage. 6. They are now without bread. 7. Use your opportunities and you will soon be worthy of honor. 8. I was considered (*habeo*) more like him than you are. 9. They will make themselves masters of the whole of Gaul. 10. He will take the city at the first onslaught. 11. In this way (*modus*) he will show that he is braver than they. 12. A man of the highest ability, he was considered unworthy of the lowest office. 13. He used to say that you could not buy friends with gold. 14. They have had peace for many years. 15. You wish to enjoy life, do (*fungor*) your duty. 16. Show yourselves worthy of your liberty. 17. You do not lack skill (*ars*) so much as you lack energy (*industria*). 18. All the ships were full of corn. *Abl.* 19. He used to say that a word to the wise was enough. 20. I believe that he has taken away their liberty from all the other states. 21. No one will be spared (7, 10).

§ 13. INTERROGATIVE FORMS.

1. Interrogative sentences in Latin (when not introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb) are usually distinguished by one of the interrogative particles, -ne, nonne, num. The order of words does not, as in English, mark an interrogative sentence.

2. The particle -ne is appended to the most emphatic word in the sentence (which is, therefore, put first): as,

Omnisne pecunia dissipata est? *Is all the money squandered?*

Note.—Yes or No (in answer to a question) is expressed by repeating the verb: as,

Amatne? *Does he love?* Amat, *Yes.* Non amat, *No.*

3. Nonne expects the answer *Yes:* as, Nonne puer amat? *Does not the boy love?* The answer expected is, Amat, *he loves* (i.e., *Yes*).

4. Num expects the answer *No:* as, Num puer amat? *The boy does not love, does he?* The answer expected is Non amat, *he does not love,* (i.e., *No*).

5. The following are the more common interrogative pronouns and adverbs:

Quis (or quisnam), *who?*

Uter, *which of the two?*

Quantus, *how great?*

Quotus, *which in the series?*

Quot, *how many?*

Qualis, *what kind?*

Ubi, *where?*

Unde, *whence?*

Cur,
Quare, } *why?*
Quamobrem,

Quā, *in which direction?*

Quo, *whither?*

Quando, *when?* (Cum is never interrogative)

Qui, *how?*

Quam (with adj. or adv.), *how?*

Quemadmodum, }
or quomodo, } *how?*

Quoties, *how often?*

Quamdiu, *how long?*

Quousque, *how far?*

Thus:

Quis es? *Who are you?* Quota hora est? *What o'clock is it?*

Cur id rogas? *Why do you ask that?*

Quae tandem causa te impellit? *What motive, pray, impels you?*

Quisnam hoc fecit? *Who, pray, has done this?* (Nam joined to quis, adds the idea of *impatience*).

Quomodo vales? *How are you?*

Quod facinus admisit? *What crime has he committed?*

Note.—Quod is the adjectival form of quid, *what*? If quid were used, it would take the Gen.: as, Quid facinŏris admisit?

6. *Whether . . . or* (in a double question) is Utrum . . . an; *whether . . . or not*, utrum . . . an non: as,

Utrum Pallas hoc fecit an Iuno? (*Whether*) *has Pallas done this or Juno?*

Utrum haec vera sunt an non? (*Whether*) *is this true or not?*

Note.—Utrum is sometimes omitted, sometimes replaced by the appended -ne: as, Hoc an illud fecisti? *did you do this or that?* Nōvistine me an ignorās? *do you know me or don't you know me?*

7. An abrupt rhetorical question is often introduced by An: as, An servi esse vultis? *Can it be that you want to be slaves?*

Exercise 13.

1. Which of you two was present in that battle? 2. Who gave you the book? 3. Was he killed by a stone? 4. Do you say that he is unwilling to obey? No. 5. Will he come here to-day or to-morrow? 6. Are those your words or not? 7. Have you forgotten your injuries? 8. Why do you ask a thing so foolish? 9. How do you know all this? 10. Does he know the glory of such virtue? 11. Do you think that death is an eternal sleep? 12. Who was milder than he? 13. Where are you going? Where are you coming from? 14. When will they do it? 15. Does not the sun shine (*luceo*) even for the wicked? 16. Whether is it water or wine? 17. How many ships can they muster (*cogo*)? 18. How bravely they died! 19. How many miles are we away from the town? 20. Did he send them home to be a warning (*documentum*) to others? Yes.

§ 14. RELATIVES AND CORRELATIVES.

1. The case of a Rel. Pron. is determined by the verb of its own clause; its gender, number and person by the antecedent: as,

Ego, qui te laudo, rex sum. *I, who praise you, am king.*

Ego, quem tu laudas, rex sum. *I, whom you praise, am king.*

2. The relative—so often omitted in English—is never omitted in Latin: as,

Artem, quam novi, exerceo. *I practise the art I know.*

3. A relative may agree with the predicate of its own clause instead of with the antecedent: as, Thebae, quod Boeotiae caput est. *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

4. The relative, like the Adj., when referring to nouns of different gender, may be neuter or agree with the last: as, Honor et gloria quae plerisque cara sunt. *Honor and glory which are dear to most people.*

Neque homini neque ferae, quam semel conspiciunt, parcunt. *They spare neither man nor beast that they once see.*

5. The antecedent of a relative pronoun is often omitted: as, Dividebat agros quibus volebat. *He distributed lands to those to whom he wished.*

6. When the antecedent is emphatic, the Rel. clause is thrown forward and the main clause introduced by Is *he*, or idem *same*: as,

Qui id fecit, is (idem) abiit. *The man who did it, is gone.*

7. A noun used appositively as an antecedent, is attracted into the Rel. clause: as,

Abiit Romā, qua in urbe a puero habitaverat. *He departed from Rome, a city in which he had lived from boyhood.*

8. A relative referring to a whole sentence is expressed by *id quod* or *quae res*: as,

Invidiam vicisti, id quod difficillimum est (or quae res difficillima est). *You have vanquished envy, which is a most difficult thing to do.*

9. *What*, as a relative, is translated by *id quod* or *ea quae* (*that which, the things which*): as,

Ea, quae recta sunt, laudantur. *What is right, is praised.*

CORRELATIVES.

10. Pronouns and Adjs. are often followed by a corresponding Rel. Pron.

These are called *Correlatives*. Thus:—

Is . . . qui, *he . . . who;* idem . . . qui, *the same . . . as;* talis . . . qualis, *such as;* tantus . . . quantus, *as great as;* tot . . . quot, *as many as:* as,

Idem est qui semper fuit. *He is the same as he always was.*

Res eodem statu quo antea stat. *The matter stands in the same position as before.*

Talis est qualis semper fuit. *He is of the same character as he always was.*

Tantam voluptatem habeo quantam tu. *I have as much pleasure as you.*

Tot erant milites quot fluctus maris. *The soldiers were as many as the waves of the sea.*

Note. The adverbs *such, as* limiting Adjs. or Advs. are expressed by tam: as, Tam bonus homo. *Such a good man.*

As good as you. Tam bonus quam tu.

11. The Adjs. primus (*first*), ultimus (*last*), solus and unus (*alone*), are used adverbially in Latin, where in English they are used as predicates of a Rel. clause or joined to an Inf.: as,

Primus mala nostra sensit. *He was the first who perceived our evils.*

Primus vēnit; ultimus abiit. *He was the first to come and the last to go.*

EXERCISE 14.

1. I have never seen as large a meeting (*concio*) as this is. 2. I will show you such a battle as you have never seen before. 3. He who easily believes, is easily deceived. 4. What is crooked (*varus*) is base. 5. That part of the nation which had made war was punished (invert Rel.). 6. We miss (*desidero*) Pompey who was the light of Italy. 7. You will enjoy that fortune and honor which come alike to all. 8. The few ships he had, he sent away. 9. He says that he will send them the best horseman he has. 10. How have you been able to build cities as large as these? 11. He was the first to call down philosophy from heaven. 12. No one even dared to wish for as much as the gods have given us. 13. He says that the good citizen is the man who loves his country. 14. He says he admires the animal that is called man. 15. The more clever a man is, the more he is distrusted (7, 10). 16. My friend, who came here yesterday, will go to the city to-morrow to see you. 17. He said that he would build a house for his son. 18. Why did you not come when (*cum*) you promised? 19. I will go home and sleep. 20. Write to me often lest you forget my name.

§ 15. THE IMPERATIVE, THE NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE, AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

1. *Commands* are expressed by the Imperative mood: as, Audīte hoc, *hear this.* The negative particle is Ne: as,

Nīmium ne crede colori. *Do not trust too much to your complexion.*

2. Instead of Ne with the Imperative, which is used mainly in poetry, Latin uses in *prohibitions:*

(a) Noli (Pl. nolite) + Pres. Inf.: as, Noli id facere. *Do not do it.*

(b) Ne + Perf. Subjun.: as, Ne flumen transieris. *Do not cross the river.*

(c) Ne + Pres. Subjun.: as, Ne multa discas sed multum. *Do not learn many things but much.*

3. Or (—and not) in Neg. Imperatives is Neve (neu): as,

Illud ne feceris neve dixeris. *Do not do or say that.*

Sequĕre neve retrospexeris. *Follow and do not look back.*

4. The imperatives of facio and curo are also used in commands as, Fac (cura) ut id sciam. *Take care that I know that (let me know it).*

5. The Imperative in -to (Pl. -tote) is used where there is distinct reference to the future: as,

Mortuum in urbe ne sepelīto. *Thou shalt not bury a dead man in the city.*

Servus meus liber esto. *Let my slave be free.*

It is chiefly used in Wills and Laws.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

6. The Subjunctive is used in simple sentences:

(a) In *Wishes:* as, Moriar, *may I die!* Felix sis, *may you be fortunate!*

The negative is Ne: as, Ne vivam si scio. *May I not live if I know!*

(b). In *Commands* or *Exhortations:* as, Ne abeat. *Let him not go away.* The negative is Ne.

(c) To soften an assertion: as,

Velim ignoscas (ut omitted). *I should like you to pardon.*

Mallem te vidēre. *I should prefer to see you.*

Crederes. *You would have believed.*

Hoc dixerim. *This I would have said.*

d In questions that imply *deliberation:* as,

Quid faciam? *What am I to do? (What shall I do?)*

Quid facerem? *What was I to have done?*

It is called the *Deliberative Subjunctive.* It is often introduced by An: as,

An ego non venirem? *Ought I not to have come?*

7. **Utinam** (*Oh that, would that*) with the Subjun. is often used to express a wish. It is used as follows:

When the fulfilment of the wish is possible, *Utinam* is joined with the Pres. Subjun.: as,

Utinam adsit. *Oh, that he may be there* (in the future).

Utinam adfuerit. *Oh, that he may have been there* (just now).

When the wish cannot be realised, the Imperfect or Plupf. Subjun. is used: the Imperf. when the wish is referred to the present, the Plupf. when it is referred to the past: as,

Utinam adesset. *Oh! that he were here* (now).

Utinam adfuisset. *Oh! that he had been here* (in the past).

The negative is Ne: as,

Utinam ne hoc mihi in mentem incidisset. *Would that this had not occurred to my mind!*

EXERCISE 15.

1. Go away; depart from this city. 2. Let us not lose such an opportunity. 3. Thou shalt not kill. 4. Would that he were now alive! 5. You would have thought them vanquished. 6. Do not be troublesome. 7. I believe that he was buried in the same tomb in which his father lies. 8. Do not praise the wicked. 9. May all such citizens perish! 10. Why should I enumerate the multitude of their ships? 11. See that you write me soon. 12. Oh, that I had been living in those days! 13. I should like you to come to Rome immediately. 14. Oh, that I could find him! 15. Let us remember that life is short. 16. Do not lay *(confero)* the blame on *(in)* me. 17. Oh, that he may listen to *(audio)* you! 18. Restrain *(coerceo)* thy tongue, so shalt thou be able to restrain thy temper *(animus)* also. 19. He said that he met her yesterday. 20. He summoned the citizens to his house to excite them against the magistrates.

§ 16. THE TENSES.

1. The Latin Present is used for both the English Pres. Indefinite and the Progressive Pres.: as, Scribo, *I write* or *I am writing.*

Note.—With Advs. of past time extending up to the present, it is used for the Eng. past: as,

Iam diu cupio te vidēre. *I have long been wishing to see you.*

2. The Imperf. expresses an action going on in past time: as, Saxa in eos devolvebant. *They were rolling down stones on them.*

It is, therefore, used to express *repeated, continuous,* or *habitual* action: as,

Hunc saepe audiebant. *They often heard him.*

Hic ara vetus stabat. *Here an old altar used to stand.*

Consilium mutavit; videbat enim nihil confici posse. *He changed his plan; for he saw that nothing could be done* (imperfect of *continuous* action).

3. The Impf. has, therefore, often the force of the Eng. *began, attempted* as. Ad proelium sese expediebant, *they began to prepare themselves for battle;* urbem servabam, *I was trying to save the city.*

4. The Latin Perf. represents both the Eng. Pres. Perf. (Perf. with *have*) and the English past indefinite: as,

Scripsi. *I wrote,* or *I have written.*

With postquam, ubi, cum primum, ut primum, ut, simul ac (or before a vowel, atque) it is used for the English Pluper. with *when, after (that), as soon as:* as,

Postquam haec audivit, abiit. *After he had heard this, he went away.*

5. The Fut. represents an action as going on, and the Fut.-Perf. an action as complete, in future time: as,

Scribam, *I shall write;* scripsero, *I shall have written.*

After *when, if,* etc., English often uses the Pres. tense referring to the future: as, *I will send him, when he comes.* In such a case Latin requires the Fut., or—if the action of one verb is represented as over before that of the other begins—the Fut.-Perf.: as,

Eum mittam cum redibit or redierit. *I will send him, when he comes.*

In fact, when there is a Fut. in the main clause, there is usually a Fut. or Fut.-Perf. in the subordinate clause: as, Haec civitas, dum erit, eum laudabit. *This country, while it exists, will praise him.*

CLASSIFICATION OF TENSES.

6. Latin tenses are divided into *Primary* and *Secondary* (or *Historical*), as follows:

Primary Tenses	Pres.,	Amat, *he loves.*
	Perf.	Amavit, *he has loved.*
	Fut.	Amabit, *he will love.*
	Fut. Perf.	Amaverit, *he will have loved.*
Secondary (or	Imperf.,	Amabat, *he was loving.*
Historical)	Perf.	Amavit, *he loved.*
Tenses	Pluperf.	Amaverat, *he had loved.*

EXERCISE 16.

1. You will do it when you please (*volo*). 2. When it is ordered, it will be done. 3. After he had left the city, he fled to his father. 4. Philosophy flourished in Greece. 5. When he came to the town, he shut himself in his litter. 6. I have long known that he was a fool. 7. Let those come who are (will be) able. 8. I had long thought that it could never happen. 9. They tried to prevent our soldiers. 10. Whatever you do, I shall approve. 11. I will not leave you alive; you shall die under the rod (*Abl.*). 12. Whatever is about to be, will be (*fio*). 13. They came up to our aid (*Dat.*), and took the hill. 14. I have promised money to one *altus*, power to another 15. You will carry all these things to Rome. 16. Next year the same people were betraying their city. 17. They used often to contend with the bravest of the German tribes. 18. Let us go to render thanks (*gratias agere*) to the gods. 19. I shall not see him again, unless (*nisi*) he returns (*fut.*) soon. 20. He saw that the danger was serious (*grave*).

§ 17. THE SUPINE. GERUND, GERUNDIVE, AND PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

1. Latin verbs have two Supines, one in -um and one in -u: as, Amatum *to love;* amatu, *to be loved.*

2. The Supine in -um denotes *purpose,* and is used only after verbs of *motion;* as,

Legatos mittunt pacem petitum. *They send ambassadors to sue for peace.*

3. The Supine in -u is used with a few Adjs. like mirabile (*wonderful*), facile, difficile, incredible, etc. and with fas (*right*), nefas *wrong*, as,

Mirabile dictu, *wonderful to say;* nefas est dictu, *it is impiety to say it.*

Note.—The supines in -u in common use are: Dictu, factu, visu, cognitu (*to be learnt*).

4. The *Gerund* is a verbal noun of the II Decl.: as,

Docendo discimus. *We learn by teaching.*

It is not used in the Nom., which is supplied by the Inf.; as,

Vidēre est credēre. *Seeing is believing.*

5. The *Gerundive* is a verbal Adj. with a Pass. meaning (possibly a Fut. Part. Pass.): as, Hostis timendus. *An enemy to be feared.*

It is generally used for the Gerund, where the Gerund (if used) would be followed by an Acc.: as,

Docendis viris discimus. *We learn by teaching men* (lit., *by men to be taught:* for docendo viros).

Note.—If the verb governs the Dat., the Gerund and not the Gerundive is to be used: as,

Pauperibus subveniendo. *By aiding the poor.*

6. The Gerundive is used idiomatically to express *purpose* after a few verbs like *give* do, *give up* (trado), *have done* (curo), *mark out* (denoto), *hire out* (loco): as,

Multos necandos denotavit, *he marked out many for death* (lit., *to be killed);* aedem Victoriae faciendam curavit, *he had a temple of victory built.*

7. The Gerundive is used with the verb *to be*, to form a whole Conjugation (called the *Passive Periphrastic*), as:

Monendus sum. *I must be, or ought to be warned.*

Monendus eram. *I ought to have been warned*, etc.

This is the common way to express *duty, propriety*, or *necessity:* as,

Aqua nobis bibenda est. *We must drink water* (lit., *water must be drunk by us*).

N.B. The agent is expressed by the Dat.

8. Intransitive verbs are used, in the Pass. Periphrastic, *impersonally*: as, Omnibus moriendum est, *all must die*, nobis pacto standum est, *we must stand by the pact* (lit., *it must be stood*).

9. If a verb governs a Dat., the Pass. Periphrastic is (in accordance with rule: 7, 10) Impersonal: as,

Inimicis a nobis parcendum est. *We should spare our enemies* (= *it should be spared to our enemies by us*).

The Agent is then expressed by a (or ab) + Abl.

10. The Gerundive and Pass. Periphrastic of Deponent verbs are Pass. as in other verbs, and, in the case of verbs that govern the Abl. (*fruor, utor, fungor*, etc.), may be used either personally or impersonally: as,

Non imitandus est. *He is not to be imitated.*

Haec nobis fruenda sunt. *These things must be enjoyed by us.*

Utendum est iudicio. *We must use our judgment.*

11. The Gen. of the Gerund or of the Gerundive, is often used to express *purpose*, with causā, *for the sake of* (4, 6): as,

Huc querendi causā venerunt. *They have come here for the purpose of complaining.*

Vestis est frigoris depellendi causā. *Dress is intended to keeping off cold* (lit., *is for the sake of*, etc.).

Note.—A Gerundive, when joined with a pronoun plural in meaning but singular in form, is itself singular: as,

Non id loquor vestri hortandi causā. *I do not say this for the purpose of exhorting ȳou* (for hortandorum).

12. The Gerund, and not the Gerundive, is to be used: (a) With verbs that govern the Dat.: as, Parcendo inimicis, *by sparing enemies*. (b) Where euphony would be violated: as, Amicos videndi causā, *for the sake of seeing friends* (not amicorum videndorum causā). This rule is often violated. (c) Where ambiguity results: as, Aliquid docendi causā, *for the sake of teaching something* (not alicuius, which would mean *some one*).

EXERCISE 17.

1. Then came the day for passing (*fero*) the law. 2. We should fight for our country. 3. We shall have to fight. 4. He was very active in cutting down the enemy. 5. He imported wine into Gaul

7

in order to tempt (*illicio*) the Gauls into Italy.   6. He was respon-
sible (*auctor esse*+*Gen.*) for attacking this city.   7. The Roman
people must defend their cities.   8. We ought to march, use *eo, to go*)
on Rome.   9. You must labor to preserve us from disaster.   10. We
must consult the interests of these people (use *homo*).   11. They
ought to have been ejected from the city.   12. The Senate thought
that the thing should be rejected (*reicio*).   13. You will do more
good by sparing them than by killing them.   14. By assigning
(*tribuo*) to each man his own, he restored peace.   15. The business
of tilling the soil seemed to him the pursuit (*studium*) of kings.
16. He said that he could scarcely speak for (*prae*) grief.   17. Why
do you waste time in talking?   18. An opportunity of pardoning
the prisoners was given him.   19. It is impious (*nefas*) to say that
such an old age can be wretched.   20. Let us hasten to our friends at
Rome (say *to*).   21. They came to Caesar to clear themselves (use
causa)

§ 18. THE PARTICIPLE.

1. The Participle has partly the nature of a verb and partly that
of an Adj. Hence the name (pars and capio). Like a verb, it has
voice, tense, and number, and governs the same case as the verb
from which it is formed; like an Adj., it has declension and gender
and agrees with nouns.

2. Transitive verbs have in Latin *three* participles:

(*a*) A *Pres. Part. Act.*: as, Amans, *loving*.

(*b*) A *Fut. Part. Act.*: as, Amaturus, *about to love*.

(*c*) A *Perf. Part. Pass.*: as, Amatus, *loved, having been loved*.

3. The Latin Participle is used to express an English clause in-
troduced by *who, when, while, as, if, though, because*: as,

Non parcimus resistentibus. *We do not spare those who resist us.*

Epistola ad me scribentem venit. *The letter came to me when
(while, as) I was writing.*

Eis vel morientibus non ignoscet. *He will not pardon them, even
though (if) they are dying.*

Caesar haec veritus, suos eduxit. *Caesar, because he was afraid
of this, led out his men*

This is one of the most important features of Latin syntax. The principle may be stated as follows: The Latin Part., apart from its adjectival force, is used to express the adverbial relations of *time, condition, cause, concession,* or *attendant circumstance.*

4. The Latin Part. must frequently be translated into English by a main verb: as,

Eum arreptum Romam trahebant *They seized him and began to drag him to Rome.*

Ingressus consēdit. *He entered and sat down.*

This is also a most important principle and, taken in connection with that of paragraph 3, largely accounts for the compactness of the Latin sentence.

5. The Pres. Part., used strictly, denotes time contemporaneous with that of the main verb: as,

Hoc dixit moriens. *This he said while dying.*

It is often, however, (especially in the oblique cases) used in a more general sense: as,

Pugnantium clamor. *The shouting of combatants.*

Note.—The Abl. of the Gerund is often used instead of the Pres. Part.: as,

Laniando dentibus hostem, exspiravit. *Mangling his enemy with his teeth, he expired.*

6. Of Latin verbs, deponents alone have a Perf. Part. Act. Thus: Locutus is *having spoken,* and secutus, *having followed,* but victus is not *having conquered,* but *having been conquered;* auditus is not *having heard,* but *having been heard.*

In place of the Perf. Part. Act., which is wanting, Latin uses generally the Perf. Part. Pass. absolutely: as,

Urbe capta, abiit, *Having taken the city, he withdrew* (lit., *the city taken*).

The Abl. is (as has been remarked) the *case absolute* in Latin, and the use of the Abl. Abs. for the Perf. Part. Act. accounts for the common occurrence of the Abl. Abs. in Latin authors.

7. The Perf. Part. Pass. is often used for an abstract or verbal noun· as, Ab urbe condita, *from the foundation of the city;* post expulsum patrem, *after the expulsion of the father.*

8. A demonstrative pronoun is not joined, as in English, to the Part. Thus: *Those doing this, will be punished*, is, Qui hoc facient, poenas dabunt (not ii facientes).

EXERCISE 18.

1. He bound the captives and set them in the midst. 2. I spoke these words to you as you were standing by (*adsto*). 3. He composed songs and recited them to the army. 4. On departing, he put me at the head of (*praeficio*) the army. 5. It is said that he was killed while sailing to Africa. 6. Most of them were seen while returning to their camp. 7. These evils must be cured. 8. You will find the enemy shut in between the mountains and the sea. 9. Having divided the booty among them, they went home. 10. Many books have been written on *odes* despising glory. 11. He will attack you while you are crossing the river. 12. I believe that he will give up *dedo* his province and return immediately. 13. Many are prudent in selecting horses but imprudent in selecting friends. 14. We do not believe a liar (*mendax*), even when he speaks the truth. 15. Have they come here to see us? 16. You must use all your influence to make the allies safe. 17. After he had reached the river (16, 4), he ordered the guides to be called. 18. You should pity your allies. 19. After taking their camp, he laid waste all their land. 20. While flying from the smoke, you will fall into the fire.

§ 19. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

1. The Abl. as has been said -is the *case absolute* in Latin and the Abl. Absolute is the common form used to express the Perf. Part. Act. of all but deponent verbs (18, 6): as,

Hoc audito, ad castra rediit. *Having heard this, he returned to the camp.*

Note.—Other substitutes are: (*a*) Cum+the Pluperf. Subj. (*b*) Postquam+Perf. Ind. (28, 5).

The Abl. Abs. is also used for the Eng. Pres. Part. Act. used—as it so often is—for the Perf. Part.: as, Hoc consilio capto, subito abiit. *Forming this design, he suddenly departed.*

2. The Abl. Abs. is used, in translating into Latin, to express an English main clause, or an adv. clause of *time, cause, condition, concession*, or *attendant circumstance*, when these would naturally be represented by a Perf. Part. Act.: Thus:—

They charged and defeated them. Impetu facto, eos vicerunt (Abl. Abs. for main clause).

Caesar, when he had learned this, returned to the senate-house. Caesar, hoc cognito, ad curiam rediit (time).

Though everything is lost, courage remains. Perditis omnibus rebus, virtus manet (concession).

As the general had been killed, they fled. Imperatore interfecto, diffugerunt (cause).

Note.—The Abl. Abs. is placed at or near the beginning of the sentence. It should not include more than a noun and Part., or a noun, Part., and Obj.: as, Me haec verba dicente, abiit. *As (while) I was saying these words, he went away.*

3. The Abl. Abs. must introduce a new subject. Thus:

The enemy, as they were retreating, laid waste the land. Hostes, se recipientes, agros vastabant (not hostibus se recipientibus).

Manlius, having killed a Gaul, despoiled him. Manlius Gallum caesum spoliavit (not caeso Gallo, eum spoliavit).

The Abl. Abs. would here be wrong because the nouns (hostes and Gallum), which would naturally be in the Abl. Abs., are required in the sentence, one in the Nom. and the other in the Acc.

4. As the verb Esse has no Pres. Part., a noun in the Abl. Abs. is joined predicatively to an Adj. or another noun: as,

Vivis fratribus. *In his brothers' life-time* (i.e., *his brothers being alive*).

Salvis legibus. *Without violation of the laws* (i.e., *the laws safe*).
Te duce. *Under your command* (*you being leader*).
Te invito. *Against your will* (*you being unwilling*).
Re infecta. *Without success* (*the thing being undone*).
Duce non exspectato. *Without waiting for a guide.*

5. The following uses of the Abl. Abs. should be noticed:
Bruto consule. *In the consulship of Brutus.*
Suadente Gaio. *By the advice of Gaius.*
Adiuvantibus Gallis. *With the assistance of the Gauls.*
Te non adiuvante. *Without your assistance.*
Caesare necato. *After the killing of Caesar.*
Te repugnante. *In spite of your opposition.*

Exercise 19.

1. After wasting the land, they returned. 2. On receiving the letter, he left the city. 3. The money was paid in my presence (use *praesens*). 4. They came to Italy during the reign of Romulus. 5. Will he go away without consulting any one? (use *nullus*). 6. The enemy were disturbed by our arrival and we immediately attacked the camp. 7. On the defeat of their army, the city surrendered. 8. When he had spoken thus, the ambassadors withdrew. 9. They fought against my will. 10. When the war is ended, we shall restore our prisoners. 11. He was unwilling, in the absence of the first legion, to join battle. 12. This victory he gained with very few wounded. 13. I was not so mild in the consulship of Plancus. 14. A gate was opened and they sallied forth. 15. He called the merchants together and consulted them. 16. They set out when the winter was not yet ended. 17. On the approach of summer, they begin to sail the sea. 18. He ought to have told us that he would return. 19. After advancing three miles, we came to the camp. 20. These matters settled (*statuo*), we went off to sleep.

§ 20. THE FUTURE PARTICIPLE AND THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

1. The Fut. Part. Act. expresses *futurity* and *intention:* as,

Venio agros visurus. *I come to see the fields.*

Note.—This use is more common in poetry than in prose writers.

2. From the Fut. Part. Act. and the verb *to be*, is formed a whole conjugation called the Act. Periphrastic Conjugation. Thus:

Amaturus sum. *I am about to love* (or *I intend to love*).

Amaturus eram (fui). *I was about to love* (or *I intended to love*).

Etc.

This conjugation supplies the place of the Fut. Subjun. Act. which is wanting as, Rogo quid facturus sis. *I ask what you will do.*

Note.—The verb of an interrogative sentence, when dependent upon a verb of asking or the like, is in the Subjun. It is called an Indirect question.

Exercise 20.

1. Does he intend to try (*tento*) the chances of war again? 2. Do you intend to seek the same office as before? 3. Why are you about to attempt that? 4. Many birds, when seeking a warmer climate

deos, will even cross the sea. 5. I believe that they took the city and set it on fire. 6. Why do you remain in office so long against the wish of your fellow-citizens? 7. Though defeated and almost crushed he was still reigning. 8. Leaving his province, he soon returned home. 9. These provinces lost, your revenues (*vectigalia*) will be lost. 10. Despoiled (*privo*) of his sovereignty, he will repair (*peto*) to some other land. 11. When your merchants had been badly treated (*tracto*) by another nation, you made war upon it. 12. A judge ought to favor nobody. 13. The weather (*tempestas*) is not fit for sailing. 14. When you have done your work (*Abl. Abs.*), you must help me. 15. Do you not intend to keep the allies free from fear? 16. The ox was given us for ploughing (*causa*). 17. He said that he was about to speak upon (*de*) the character (*mores*) of the man. 18. This nation, before the gift (18, 7) of citizenship, injured us greatly 19. I knew that you would find what you had lost. 20. Do not go further against the will of your father (*Abl. Abs.*).

§ 21. UT-CLAUSE WITH VERBS OF ASKING.

1. Verbs meaning *to ask*, *command*, or *advise*, are followed by an Ut-clause (with the Subjun.) and not, as in English, by the Inf.: as,

Rogo te ut id facias. *I ask you to do it.*

Imperat ut clipeos percutiant. *He orders them to strike their shields.*

Moneo te ut aurum reddas. *I warn you to restore the gold.*

Note.—Iubeo (*order*), and veto (*forbid*), take the Inf. and not the Ut-clause: as,

Eos pedem referre iussit (vetuit). *He ordered (forbade) them to retreat.*

2. After a Secondary tense (§ 16, 6) the verb of the Ut-clause becomes Imperf.: as,

Rogavi ut id faceres. *I asked you to do it.*

Imperavit ut clipeos percuterent. *He ordered them to strike their shields.*

This is called *Secondary Sequence* and is a principle of general application.

3. When *Not* is required in the Ut-clause, ne is used and not ut non: as,

Monui te ne uxorem duceres. *I warned you not to marry.*

So, Ne quis is used for ut nemo *(that no one)*, ne quid for ut nihil
(that nothing), ne ullus for ut nullus *(that no)*, and ne unquam
for ut nunquam *(that never)*: as,

Te rogo ne quid facias. *I ask you to do nothing.*

Obsecravit eum ne fidem unquam violaret. *He entreated him never
to break his word.*

4. Or(= *and not*), after a verb of *asking*, is Neve: as,

Te rogavi ne eum accusares neve multares. *I asked you not to
accuse or punish him.*

Neither . . . nor would be neve . . . neve.

5. Verbs meaning to *effect (efficio)* or *strive (nitor)* are also followed
by an Ut-clause: as,

Sol efficit ut omnia floreant. *The sun makes everything flourish.*
Nitere ut id facias. *Strive to do it.*

So too, verbs meaning to *decide*, when the subject of the Ut-clause
is different from that of the main verb: as,

Decernit ut consules delectum habeant. *He decrees that the consuls
shall hold a levy.*

But: Omnia pati statuit. *He decided to suffer everything (§ 1, 3).*

6. Verbs meaning to *warn*, when stating a fact, become verbs of
saying and require the Acc. with Inf.: as,

Nos monet hostes adesse. *He warns us that the enemy is at hand.*
So too: Tibi persuadebo te errare. *I will persuade you that you are
wrong.*

EXERCISE 21.

1. I will ask him to come. 2. Will they persuade him to return?
3. I beg you not to decree anything. 4. I urged (*hortor*) them to
read their books. 5. I begged of them not to desert me. 6. He
said that he had warned us to set out at once. 7. He decreed that
no one should sell bread in the camp. 8. They were striving to
defend the rights of the people. 9. He ordered them not to neglect
(*desero*) the sacred rites (*sacra*) of the state. 10. Advise him not to
ask the gods for wealth. 11. Beg them not to come here to-day.
12. He said that he would strive with his utmost care to be useful to
the citizens. 13. He ordered coined (*signatum*) gold and silver to

be prepared. 14. Beg them not to fetter *obstringo* their minds by sloth. 15. They send ambassadors to announce that they are going to obey. 16. He says that he has chosen three men for *Dat.* drawing up *scribo* laws. 17. The army has gone there to plunder the temple *use causa* . 18. He decided to repair all the ships. 19. The soldiers had to leap down from their ships *desilio de*. 20. I will take a day for deliberating *delibero*. 21. Can you persuade them that they are wrong? 22. Why are you distrusted by your countrymen?

§ 22. SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

1. The Law of the Sequence of Tenses in subordinate clauses, referred to in § 21, 2, is of great importance and may be restated as follows:

A primary tense in the principal clause, is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause; a secondary tense in the Prin. clause, is followed by a secondary tense in the Dep. clause. Thus:

PRIMARY.

Rogat		*He asks*	
Rogabit	}te ut venias	*He will ask*	}you to come.
Rogavit		*He has asked*	
Rogaverit		*He will have asked*	

SECONDARY.

Rogabat		*He was asking*	
Rogavit	}te ut venires	*He asked*	}you to come.
Rogaverat		*He had asked*	

2. The Rule is applied in the Subordinate clauses of Indirect Narration (§ 5): as,

Ego meā manu anulum, quem gero, feci. *I made with my own hand the ring which I am wearing* (direct narration).

Dicit se suā manu anulum, quem gerat, fecisse. *He says that he made with his own hand the ring that he is wearing* (gerat, Subj. of Indir.: § 5, 3).

Dixit se suā manu anulum, quem gereret, fecisse. *He said that he made with his own hand the ring that he was wearing* (gereret, Imperf. in Indir. after Secondary tense).

So too a Perf. Subj. in Direct becomes Pluperf. Subj. after a Secondary tense in the Indir.: as,

Putabat se obsides, quos dedisset, recuperaturum esse. *He thought that he would recover the hostages whom he had given* (Indir. for: Obsides quos dedi recuperabo. *I will recover the hostages whom I have given*).

3. The Rule is also applied in Final Clauses (§ 8): as,

Venio ut urbem videam. *I come that I may see the city.*
Vēni ut urbem vidērem. *I came that I might see the city.*

EXERCISE 22.

1. Can I persuade you to come? 2. They will advise you not to come. 3. A man of honor will never be persuaded to betray his country. 4. They begged him to bring everything with him. 5. I warn you not to oppose us. 6. Cicero caused Catiline to retire from Rome (use *efficio*). 7. Children then strove (*nitor*) to be dutiful (*pius*) to their parents. 8. Let us ask him to help us. 9. They asked us to help them. 10. He said that I would find what I had lost. 11. She had gone into the meadow to gather flowers. 12. They set out to follow the cavalry. 13. They returned to the camp that they might not be taken by the enemy. 14. I wrote that I might receive a letter. 15. He said that those who were standing by, were witnesses. 16. We warned them not to go into the forest alone. 17. They sailed in the morning that they might reach the harbor before night. 18. He went to Caesar to recover his hostages. 19. He said that he would gladly do all that they had asked. 20. Will he not decide at once to embark? (*in navem conscendere*).

§ 23. INDIRECT QUESTION.

1. A question dependent upon a verb of *asking, knowing, telling,* or the like, has its verb in the Subjunctive: as,

Quis es? *Who are you?* But:
Scio quis sis. *I know who you are.*
The question is then called an Indirect Question.

EXAMPLES OF THE INDIRECT QUESTION.

Dic mihi quid agas. *Tell me what you are doing.*
Rogat quot sitis. *He asks how many you are.*

Scio unde venias. *I know where you are coming from.*

Cur id fieri velit ostendit. *He points out why he wishes it to be done.* For Interrogative words, see § 13.

2. The law of sequence of tenses (§ 22) is observed in the Indirect question. Thus:—

Rogo quid agas. *I ask what you are doing.*

Rogavi quid ageres. *I asked what you were doing.*

3. The following table shows the forms of the Indir. Question.

PRIMARY SEQUENCE.

Rogo		agas	*I ask*		*you are doing*
Rogabo	quid	egeris	*I shall ask*	what	*you have done*
Rogavi		acturus sis	*I have asked*		*or did you will do*

SECONDARY SEQUENCE.

Rogabam		ageres	*I was asking*		*you were doing* or *did*
Rogavi	quid	egisses	*I asked*	what	*you had done*
Rogaveram		acturus esses	*I had asked*		*you would do*

Note.— The Fut. Subj. is supplied from the Act. Periphrastic Conjugation. See § 20, 2. Thus:

Scio quid acturus sis. *I know what you will do.* (Direct = Quid ages. *What will you do?*)

Sciebam quid acturus esses. *I knew what you would do.*

4. *Whether* (*if*), in an Indir. question, is Num: as,

Dic mihi num venerit. *Tell me whether* (*if*) *he has come.*

Whether . . . or is Utrum . . . an; but *or not* is Necne in the Indirect and not annon as in the direct question: as,

Quaerit utrum honestum sit an turpe. *He asks whether it is honorable or base.*

Nescit utrum di sint necne. *He does not know whether there are gods or not.*

5. Nescio an (*I do not know whether*) has the force of, *I almost think:* as,

Nescio an nulla aetas beatior sit. *I almost think that no period of life is happier.*

Exercise 23.

1. I ask whether you have read the book. 2. I asked whether you had read the book. 3. He wondered who I was and where I had come from. 4. I should like to know whether you have finished your work or not. 5. Say whether you are speaking truth or falsehood. 6. Let us ask whether it is better or not. 7. I asked them where he had gone. 8. Tell me why you left your province. 9. Ask him the road by which he will return (say: *by what road*). 10. I saw what you would do. 11. Ask them where they have laid my book. 12. We all know how daring you are. 13. Why do you not ask him where he has been. 14. I do not know what he thinks about the matter. 15. Does he know what o'clock it is? 16. Take care (15, 4) that you inform me when you are going to set out. 17. You will never believe how often I have advised them. 18. Tell me whether your friend has returned or not. 19. I almost think that the man is happy. 20. He did not know how mutable Fortune was.

§ 24. QUOD-CLAUSES, UT-CLAUSES WITH IMPERSONALS, AND DEFINING UT-CLAUSES.

1. Quod (*the fact that*) with the Indicative, often introduces a noun-clause in Latin: as,

Magnum est hoc, quod victor victis pepercit. *This is an important matter (the fact), that, when victorious, he spared the vanquished.*

Quod, with the Ind., is often found in this sense with verbs of *emotion* like Gaudeo (*rejoice*), queror (*complain*), glorior (*boast*), gratum est (*it is pleasant*), mirum est (*it is wonderful*): as,

Vehementer laetor quod scripsisti. *I am very glad that you have written.*

Mihi gratum est quod venisti. *The fact that you have come is welcome to me.*

2. A noun-clause, introduced by Ut with Subjun., or by quod with the Indic., is used after Accedit, in the sense of *It is added*: as,

Huc accessit ut caecus esset. *To this was added the fact that he was blind.*

Accedit quod patrem tuum amo. *There is added the fact that I love your father.*

3. An Ut-clause is used after the following Impersonals: *Accidit,* *evēnit, contingit, fit, it happens; restat, reliquum est, it remains;* *fieri potest, it is possible* (lit., *it may happen*); *nullo modo fieri potest,* *it is impossible; sequitur, it follows;* tantum abest, *it is so far from;* expedit, *it is expedient;* convēnit, *it is agreed:* as,

Qui fit ut nemo contentus vivat? *How does it happen that no one* *lives contentedly?*

Accĭdit ut primus id nuntiet. *It happens that he is the first to* *announce it.*

Tantum abest ut miremur omnes, ut nemo satisfaciat. *So far are* *we from admiring everyone, that no one satisfies* (lit., *so far is it away*).

Convēnit ut unis castris sint. *It is agreed that they shall be in one* *camp.*

Convēnit ut in unis castris essent. *It was agreed that they should* *be in one camp* (secondary sequence; always the impf.).

4. A noun-clause, introduced by Ut with the Subjun., is used to define a previous noun: as,

Commune vitium est ut invidia gloriae comes sit. *It is a common* *vice that envy is the attendant of glory.*

EXERCISE 24.

1. He boasts that he always spared women and children. 2. It is a great thing that all are spared (7, 10). 3. He used to complain that men forgot their friends. 4. Why are you always boasting that you have done it? 5. It was their custom to sell their animals in the spring. 6. Is it not a wonderful thing their being unwilling to consult their own interests (7, 7)? 7. To this will be added the fact that the accused (*reus*) is a rich man. 8. Setting out to attack the camp, he heard that it had been burnt by the enemy. 9. This is a new law that we forgive our enemies. 10. Would that (15, 7) you had now as great a supply of good men as then! 11. I persuaded the father not to pay his son's debt (*aes alienum*). 12. He ordered them to bring the corn which they had promised. 13. Take care that I know what you are doing. 14. He said that the temptations (*illecebra*) of the city should be resisted (17, 9). 15. Wonderful to say, they are glad that you have won (*consequor*) the office. 16. They exhorted him to become a soldier. 17. He wished to learn what the

gods were like.   18. I cannot decide what I shall do.   19. I could not decide what I should do.   20. I knew very well which of you two had conquered.

§ 25. QUOMINUS AND QUIN.

1. Verbs meaning *to prevent* (like impedio, deterreo, retineo, etc.) are usually followed by Quominus (*by which the less*, i.e., *that not*):

Valetudo eum retinet quominus veniat.   *His health prevents him from coming* (= *that he does not come*).

Senectusne impedit quominus litteris fruamur?   *Does old age prevent us from enjoying literature?*

Note 1.—The negative in *quominus* usually disappears in the English translation.

Note 2.—Of verbs of *preventing*, prohibeo is usually followed by the Inf.: as, Prohibent eum exire.   *They prevent him from going out.*

Note 3.—Instead of Quominus, after verbs of preventing, Ne may be used: as,

Plura ne scribam, dolore impedior.   *I am prevented by grief from writing more.*

2. Quominus is especially common after the phrase Per aliquem stare (*to be owing to some one*), which is equivalent to a verb of *preventing*: as,

Per te stetit quominus mihi parērent.   *It was owing to you that they did not obey me* (= *you prevented them*).

3. When the verb of *preventing* is joined with a negative or a virtual negative, the Quominus is usually replaced by Quin (qui ne, *how not*): as,

Nunquam me deterrēre potes quin loquar.   *You can never deter me from speaking.*

Quid obstat quin sit beatus?   *What prevents him from being happy?* (*virtual negative*).

Vix teneor quin exclamem.   *I can scarcely be prevented from crying out* (*virtual neg.*).

4. Non dubito (*I do not doubt*) and non dubium est (*there is no doubt*) are usually followed by Quin: as,

Non dubito quin hoc feceris.   *I do not doubt that you did it.*

Non erat dubium quin fecisses. *There was no doubt that you had done it.*

Non est dubium quin id facturus sis. *There is no doubt that you will do it.*

5. Quin is of common occurrence and its use in the following should be noted:

Nemo erat quin fleret. *There was no one who was not weeping.*

Non recusare possumus, quin alii a nobis dissentiant. *We cannot object to others differing from us.*

Facere non possum quin rideam. *I cannot help laughing.*

Fieri non potest quin erraveris. *It is impossible that you were not wrong.*

Minimum abfuit quin perirem. *I very nearly perished* (=*it was a very little away that I did not*).

Negari non potest quin fuerint poetae ante Homerum. *It cannot be denied that there were poets before Homer.*

Nihil praetermisit quin nobis persuaderet. *He left nothing undone to persuade us.*

EXERCISE 25.

1. Nothing prevented us from building a city. 2. Nothing shall deter me from speaking the truth. 3. No one can doubt that he has returned. 4. He could hardly be prevented from laughing. 5. No one doubted that he had killed his friend. 6. They never saw him but (*quin*) they called him thief. 7. The storm will prevent them from coming. 8. We cannot object to their talking. 9. We will prevent the citizens from perishing of hunger (*abl.*). 10. There is no one that does not love him. 11. He has left nothing undone to finish the business. 12. It was owing to you that they did not burn their ships. 13. He could not help sending a letter every day. 14. You ought to be prevented from attacking. 15. He could hardly be prevented from daring war. 16. There is no doubt that it is base to break one's word. 17. Nothing ever deterred him from praising what was worthy of praise. 18. They could scarcely have be prevented from burning the houses (*virtual neg.*). 19. There is no one who does not understand that we have erred. 20. No one doubts that he will fight.

§ 26. **VERBS OF FEARING.**

1. Verbs meaning *to fear* are followed by *Ne* for *that* and *Ne non* (or *ut*) for *that not*: as,

Vereor ne veniat.   *I am afraid that he will come.*

Vereor ne non (ut) veniat.   *I am afraid that he will not come.*

The Fut. after verbs of *fearing* is expressed by the Subjun., the Pres. (or Perf.) Subjun. after a Primary tense, the Imperf. or Plpf. after a Secondary: as,

Timeo ne non labores sustineas, *I am afraid that you will not endure your labors,* timebam ne ea evenirent, *I was afraid that those things would happen.*

2. Phrases like Periculum est, *there is danger,* take the construction of verbs of *fearing:* as,

Periculum erat ne te verbis obrueret.   *There was danger that he would overwhelm you with words.*

Note.—*Should* or *would* after a verb of *fearing* in the past tense is the past of *shall* or *will* used after a present. See § 5, 1. Thus: *I am afraid that I shall die* becomes, in accordance with the rules of English Indirect statement: *I was afraid that I should die.   He is afraid that he will die* becomes *He was afraid that he would die.*

3. For Vereor as a Modal verb, see § 1, 3. Thus:

Vereor loqui.   *I am afraid to speak.*

EXERCISE 26.

1. I am afraid that I shall be thrown into prison. ·2. I was afraid that I should be thrown into prison. 3. There is danger that he will attack the camp. 4. There was danger that he would attack the camp. 5. He was afraid that we would lose our influence in the Provinces. 6. I cannot help fearing that this will not benefit the country. 7. There was danger that Fortune would desert us. 8. He was afraid that you would not be acquitted of treason. 9. I am afraid that I have hurt your feelings. 10. Do you not fear the end of those whose acts you are imitating? *A*11. You are not afraid to die. 12. He was not afraid to put a Roman citizen to death (*neco*). 13. Have you come home to sue for the consulship? 14. I warned them never to enter the city. 15. Do you think that he has hope

of seizing the camp? 16. They flung away their arms and surrendered *ibi. abs.*. 17. Will nothing persuade you to use your opportunities? 18. I can tell you that your plans are clearer than the light. 19. We were afraid that the city had been taken. 20. Do not be afraid to cross.

§ 27. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES. TEMPORAL CLAUSES. POSTQUAM, DUM, PRIUSQUAM.

1. Adverbial clauses are of *eight* kinds:

(*a*) *Local*, introduced by ubi (*where*), unde (*whence*), and quo (*whither*).

(*b*) *Temporal*, introduced by cum (*when*), dum (*while*), postquam (*after that*), priusquam (*before that*), etc.

(*c*) *Final* (those that denote an end or purpose).

(*d*) *Consecutive* (those that denote a result).

(*e*) *Causal* (those that denote a cause), introduced by quod or quia (*because*), cum or quoniam (*since*).

(*f*) *Concessive* (those that denote a concession), introduced by etsi, quamquam, quamvis, etiamsi (*although*).

(*g*) *Comparative* (those that denote comparison or proportion), introduced by ut (*as*), quasi, velut (*as if*), etc.

(*h*) *Conditional*, introduced by si (*if*), nisi (*unless*), dum (*provided that*).

2. Local adverbial clauses add to the statement of the main clause the idea of *place:* as,

Nolo vivere ubi tyrannus est.   *I do not wish to live where there is a tyrant.*

Quo vult et qua vult, vagatur.   *He strolls where he will and in what direction he will.*

Note.—Ubi expresses *rest;* quo, *motion towards;* and qua, *direction.*

The verb of the local adverbial clause is in the Ind. except (*a*) in Indir. narration, (*b*) when it has a final force (*i.e.* is used to express a purpose): as,

Dixit se quo vellet, vagari.   *He said that he strolled where he wished* (Direct = quo volo, vagor).

Massiliam abiit ubi exulet.   *He has gone off to Massilia to be in exile there* (Final Ubi = ut ibi).

8

3. Temporal Adverbial clauses introduced by postquam, simul, simul ac (or, before a vowel, atque), ubi, ut (primum), cum primum (*after that*) are followed by the Indic.: as,

Simul atque haec audivit, abiit. *After he had heard this, he went away (no sooner had he heard this).*

Note.—The Perfect is used after these conjunctions for the Eng. Pluper.

4. Temporal conjunctions meaning *while* or *until*, like Dum, donec, quoad, take the Indic. when they mean *while*, *as long as:* as,

Dum ea Romani parant, iam oppidum oppugnabatur. *While the Romans were making these preparations, the town was already being besieged.*

Note.—When the time expressed by the dum-clause includes the time of the action of the main verb, the Pres. tense is used in Latin not the past.

5. Dum, donec, quoad, meaning *until*, take the Ind. when used to express *time alone:* as,

Dum rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit. *There was silence until Marcellus returned.*

Note.—Dum (*until*) is followed by the Fut.-Pf. for the English Pres., when the action expressed by the verb of the temporal clause is to be over before that of the main verb begins: as,

Non veniet dum scripsero. *He will not come till I write* (lit., *shall have written*).

But when Dum expresses some further idea of *purpose* or *expectation*, it requires the Pres. Subjun. after Primary tenses and the Imperf. after Secondary: as,

Differant dum ira defervescat. *Let them put off till their anger cools* (i.e., *in order that their anger may cool:* purpose).

Dum naves convenirent, exspectavit. *He waited till the ships should assemble* (i.e., *in order that they might assemble;* purpose).

Impetum hostium sustinuit dum ceteri pontem interrumperent. *He withstood the attack of the enemy till the rest should break down the bridge.*

6. Dum for dummodo, *provided that*, is joined with the Subjun.: as, Oderint dum metuant. *Let them hate, provided that they fear.*

7. **Priusquam** and **antequam**, take the Ind. when they mark simple priority in time: as, Priusquam lucet, adsunt. *They are here before it is light.*

Antequam aliquo loco consedero, ne longas a me litteras exspectaveris. *Before I settle (lit., shall have settled) somewhere, do not expect a long letter from me.*

They take the Subjun., however, to express the further idea of *purpose* or of *an act anticipated* or *prevented:* as,

Priusquam se hostes ex terrore reciperent, in fines eorum exercitum duxit. *Before the enemy recovered from their panic, he led his army into their territory* (final; *in order that they might not recover*).

Priusquam pugnaretur, nox intervenit. *Night came on before the battle was fought* (result prevented).

Note 1.—They are often written in two words: as, Ante rorat quam pluit, *it drops before it rains.* Written thus, they are often used for the English *not . . . until:* as, Non prius respondebo quam tacueris, *I shall not answer until you are silent.*

Note 2.—**Priusquam** with the Subjun. became almost a fixed formula and was used to express simple priority in time: as,

Priusquam educeret in aciem, orationem est exorsus. *Before he led forth to action, he began a harangue.*

8. In Indir. Narr., the verb of a temporal Adver. clause is in the Subjun.: as,

Dixit eos, simul ac luceret, adesse. *He said that they were there, as soon as it was light.*

EXERCISE 27.

1. He falls into Scylla while he wishes to avoid Charybdis. 2. While there is life there is hope. 3. He used to say that while there was life there was hope. 4. He was detained there until the consul was consulted. 5. Wait until you are obeyed. 6. After he had observed that, he went away. 7. He did not take part in the battle until his father was killed. 8. Let him wait until we arrive. 9. Our forces entered the city before the gates were closed. 10. Provided that there is a wall between you and me, I shall not be sorry. 11. While this was going on (*gero*), word was brought that all our ships had been sunk (*demergo*). 12. They did not cease to fly until

they reached the river. 13. Before he knew the joy of life, death took him away. 14. He decided to consult the Senate before he set out. 15. They did not know how (1, 3) to praise or blame (*culpo*). 16. He exhorted them to be brave. 17. I shall be the first to oppose (14, 11) you. 18. Has he come to this harbor to refit his ships? 19. Ask him how many books he has bought. 20. Honor and glory are not to be rejected (*neut. pl.*).

§ 28. THE SYNTAX OF CUM.

1. Cum, *when*, simply expressing a point of time (called cum *temporal*) takes the Indic.: as,

Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterīus factiōnis principes erant Aedui. *When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders of the one party.*

Cum rure rediero, tu Romae eris. *When I return from the country, you will be in Rome.*

In these sentences, cum is a Rel. Adv. and corresponds to a suppressed correlative tum (*then*) in the main clause.

2. Cum meaning *since* (called cum *causal*), requires the Subjun.: as,

Quae cum ita sint, Catilina, perge. *As this is so, Catiline, go on.*

3. When used with the Imper. or Pluper., cum usually takes the Subjun.: as,

Cum leges mutare vellet, prohibitus est. *When he wished to change the laws, he was prevented.*

Decessit Agesilaus cum in portum venisset. *Agesilaus died on the day that he had entered the harbor.*

Note.—When used with the Impf. or Plpf. Ind., cum refers to some definite point of time (eo anno, eo die).

4. Cum with the Subjun., sometimes has a concessive force meaning *although*: as,

Pylades cum sis, dices te esse Orestem. *Though you are Pylades, you will say you are Orestes.*

Note.—Hence it may express the English *instead of* with a verbal noun: as,

Cum dicere deberet, tacuit. *Instead of speaking, he held his peace* (lit., *when he ought to have spoken*).

Cum hostes persequi deberet, ad urbem rediit. *Instead of (or without) following up the enemy, he returned to the city.*

5. Cum with Pluper. Subjun., is a common substitute for the Perf. Part. Act., which is wanting in Latin: as,

Cum haec dixisset, abiit. *Having spoken these words, he departed.*

There are, therefore, four substitutes for the Perf. Part. Act.:—

(a) Cum+Pluperf. Subj.   (b) Postquam+Perf. Indic.   (c) The Abl. Abs.   (d) The Perf. Part. of a synonymous deponent.

Thus: *Having spoken these words*, is:—

(a) Cum haec dixisset.   (b) Postquam haec dixit.   (c) His dictis (=*these things said*).   (d) Haec locutus.

6. Cum with the Indic. called cum *frequentative* is often used for Quoties, *as often as, whenever.*

In this sense, the Perf. is used for the English present and the Pluper. for the English past: as,

Cum rosam vidi, tum ver esse arbitror. *Whenever I see the rose then I judge that it is spring.*

Cum impetum fecerant, hostes cedere cogebantur. *Whenever they made a charge, the enemy were forced to retire.*

After Cum, however, in this sense, the Subjun. is used by Livy and Tacitus.

7. Cum is never used interrogatively. *When do you intend to speak?* is Quando (not Cum) dicturus es?

EXERCISE 28.

1. When he had seen that things were prosperous, he set out from the city. 2. This being the case, let them take their goods and go. 3. Who can tell me when he intends to return? 4. Having conquered the greater part of the island, he died there. 5. Whenever he came to a town, he demanded hostages. 6. When they had arrived at the top of the hill, they saw a broad plain below. 7. When you had finished your work, you should have helped your friend. 8. Seeing this, he marched against them at once. 9. Instead of going to Athens, you remained at Rome. 10. He obeyed at a time when all had to obey (17, 7). 11. Whenever he saw any one (say *some one*) badly clothed, he gave him his cloak. 12. When I hear

him speak, I shall know whether he is an orator or not. 13. The
battle was not ended until the general was killed. 14. Pity us.
15. Strive not (*ne*) to break the laws. 16. Will they not prefer you
to him? 17. There is no doubt that he has deceived me (25). 18. Pro
vided that you are satisfied, that is enough. 19. Since you say
nothing, I suppose that you are satisfied. 20. I must go. 21. You
will have to pay, when the day of payment (*gerund*) comes.

§ 29. FINAL AND CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

1. Instead of the *Inf. of purpose*, so common in English, Latin
uses most frequently, to express purpose, Ut with the Subjun.: as,

Venio ut pacem petam. *I come to seek peace.*
Veni ut pacem peterem. *I came to seek peace* (secondary sequence).
Such clauses are called *Final Clauses.* See § 8.

2. The Pres. Perf. is frequently followed by secondary sequence:
as,

Patronus exstiti ne is desertus videretur. *I have appeared as his
lawyer that he might not seem deserted.*

3. When a *not* is required in the final clause, Ut becomes Ne: as,

Hoc dico ne te laedam. *I say this not to offend you* (*i.e.*, to avoid
offending you).

4. The use of Ut with other negative words (nemo, nihil, nullus,
nunquam) is also avoided: as,

Portam claude ne quis excedat. *Shut the gate that no one may go
out* (ne quis = ut nemo).

Abii ne quid viderem. *I went away that I might see nothing* (ne
quid = ut nihil). *quod*

Clamant ne ullum verbum audiatur. *They are shouting that no
word may be heard* (ne ullum = ut nullum).

Hoc facite ne unquam vituperent. *Do this that they may never
revile* (ne unquam = ut nunquam).

Thus in Final Clauses:

>   *that not* = ne
>   *that no one* = ne quis
>   *that nothing* = ne quid
>   *that none* = ne ullus
>   *that never* = ne unquam

5. For the following or of a previous ne, Neve or neu is used: as,

Hoc dico ut bono animo sit neve perturbetur, *I say this that he may be of good courage and may not be disturbed.* abibo ne cum videam neve audiam, *I will go away that I may not see or hear him.*

6. The Rel. qui (called qui *final*) is often used with the Subjun. to express a *purpose;* as,

Misit legatos qui pacem peterent. *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace* (qui = ut ei, *that they*).

Note.—The antecedent must be in the 3rd person.

7. Rel. adverbs, like ubi (*where*) and unde (*whence*), are also used with the Subjun. to express a *purpose:* as,

Domum ubi habitaret lēgit. *He chose a house where he might dwell* (ubi = ut ibi, *that there*);

Cupit habere unde solvat. *He wants to have means to pay* (unde = ut inde, *that thence*).

PURPOSE IN LATIN.

To express Purpose in Latin the following forms, therefore, are used:

He sent ambassadors to sue for peace:

Legatos misit
- ut pacem peterent (ut *final*).
- qui pacem peterent (qui *final*).
- ad pacem petendam (gerundive Acc. with ad).
- pacis petendae causa (gerundive Gen. with causa).
- pacem petitum (supine after verb of motion).
- pacem petituros (Fut. Part. Act.: rare).

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

8. Clauses in Latin that express a *result* (consecutive clauses) have also Ut (*so that*) and the Subjun.: as,

Ita vivit ut nihil habeat. *He lives in such a way that he has nothing.*

9. *Ut consecutive* is used after the following demonstrative words: Talis, *such;* tantus, *so great, such;* tot, *so many;* toties, *so often;* sic, ita (with vbs.), tam (with adjs.), *so;* adeo, *to such a degree.*

10. The rule for the sequence of tenses (after a past tense) does not apply to Consec. clauses. The Perf. Subjun. is used of a single act, the Imperf. of a repeated or continuous one: as,

Tantus timor omnes occupavit ut rex ipse fugerit. *Such fear seized all, that the king himself fled* (of a single act).

Tanta tempestas coorta est ut nulla navis cursum tenere posset. *So great a storm arose that no ship could hold its course* (of a continuous act).

11. If a negative is required in a Consec. clause, Ut non is used and not—as in a Final clause—Ne: as,

Tam caecus fuit ut me non viderit. *He was so blind that he did not see me* (or *as not to see me*). So too, in a Consec. clause: *That no one* is Ut nemo, *that nothing* is ut nihil, *that no* (Adj.) is ut nullus, and *that never* is ut nunquam: as,

Talis erat ut nemo ei crederet. *He was of such a character that no one used to believe him.*

Tam improbus fuit ut nihil eum unquam a scelere revocaverit. *He was so wicked that nothing ever recalled him from crime.*

Ita insulam vexavit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo potuerit. *He so harried the island that it could, in no way, be restored to its ancient condition.*

Exercise 29.

1. Let us go to Rome to see the games. 2. Why do they not surround the city with a wall, that it may be more secure? 3. We are preparing arms, not to attack you but to defend the country. 4. It is so covered with trees that it seems a forest. 5. Take away his sword that he may hurt no one. 6. It may happen that you are sometimes (*aliquando*) wrong. 7. They took Cincinnatus from the plough to make him consul. 8. The river was so deep that no one could cross. 9. It was so hard that no one could do it. 10. Do this, that no one may blame you. 11. He went away that he might not see us. 12. Having heard of the disaster, he sent out scouts (*exploratores*) to ascertain (*cognosco*) the truth. 13. He used to say that, while learning to command, we ought also to obey. 14. Remember how well this man has deserved of (*de*) his country. 15. Wait till the class is dismissed. 16. You ought to have waited till I returned. 17. They lived in such a way that they thought nothing base. 18. It was so deep that it could not be crossed. 19. I was afraid that the enemy would overtake (*consequor*) us. 20. I commended all, that no one might complain.

§ 30. CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

1. Causal Adverbial clauses state the reason (*causa*) for the fact mentioned in the main clause. They are usually introduced by Quod, quia (*because*) or quoniam (=quum iam, *since now, seeing that*) which are followed by the Indic., when the reason is given on the speaker's own authority; by the Subjun., when it is given on the authority of another: as,

Socrates accusatus est quod corrumperet iuventutem. *Socrates was accused because was alleged he was corrupting the young men* **corrumpebat** would mean that the speaker vouched for the truth of the charge.

N.B. This use of the Subjun. is called *Virtual oblique* and is very common.

2. Cum, in the sense of *since*, is often used to introduce a Causal clause: as,

Haec cum ita sint, abibo. *As these things are so, I will go away.*

3. A Relative (called qui *causal*) is often used with the Subjun. to introduce a Causal clause: as,

Pecavisse videor qui a te discesserim. *It seems I have done wrong, inasmuch as I have parted from you.*

Note.—In this sense, qui is often strengthened by the addition of Quippe (*namely*).

4. Qui *causal* is often found with the *Acc. of Exclamation*: as,

Me miserum, qui haec fecerim. *Wretched that I am for doing this!*

5. Non quod or non quo, with the Subjun., is used to introduce a rejected reason: as,

Hoc laudo, non quod honestum sit, sed quod utile est. *I praise this, not because it is honorable but because it is expedient.*

6. Of the Concessive conjunctions, Quamquam takes the Ind., quamvis or licet the Subjun., and etsi the construction of Si (§ 32): as,

Romani, quamquam fessi erant, tamen procedunt. *The Romans, although they were weary, nevertheless advance.*

Id, quamvis difficile sit, tamen conandum est. *This, though it is difficult, must yet be attempted.*

Etsi te falso suspicer, tamen mihi ignoscere debes. *Though I should suspect you wrongly, still you ought to pardon me.*

7. Quamvis may be used with single words, in the sense of *however*: as,

Ille, quamvis prudens, aliquando decipitur. *He, however prudent, is sometimes deceived.*

8. The Rel. Qui with the Subjun., is often used concessively. It is then called *Qui concessive:* as,

Caesar, qui haec videret, tamen aciem instruxit. *Though Caesar saw this, still he drew up his line* (qui = *though he*).

9. Latin Concessive conjunctions are used to express English phrases like *In spite of, notwithstanding, whatever:* as,

Is, quamquam vir bonus erat, condemnatus est. *In spite of his being a good man, he was condemned.*

Is, quamvis nocentissimus sit, absolvetur. *However guilty he may be (whatever his guilt), he will be acquitted.*

10. Quamquam is often used co-ordinately, in the sense of *And yet:* as,

Quamquam de illis iam providerat. *And yet, he had already provided with regard to them.*

Exercise 30.

1. They are silent because they fear danger. 2. Aristides was banished because he was just (*virt. obl.*). 3. O wretched man, who seest not that death is to be contemned! 4. They praise him because he is a loyal citizen. 5. He could not hear because he was deaf. 6. He was angry with me because I preferred gain to friendship. 7. Though many dangers impend, I have determined to face (*subeo*) them. 8. He was thrown into prison because he had killed his friend. 9. He asked them for the corn which they had promised (*virt. obl.*) 10. And yet, what am I to say? 11. Though our army had been victorious, it wished to return home. 12. They will surrender, provided that their women and children are spared. 13. Though you see all this, still it must not be passed over by me. 14. Most worthy though he is of punishment, still I pity him. 15. They came to the city before we expected them. 16. While the enemy were thus wasting time, the Romans advanced against their line. 17. We waited a few days until the ambassadors arrived. 18. Shall we ever know what he thinks about the matter (*sentio*)? 19. Remember how much he has benefited the state. 20. Meeting Caesar en route (use *iter*), they flung themselves at his feet.

§ 31. QUI WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.

1 It has been seen that Qui is used with the Subjun. to express:

(a) A *purpose*: Legatos misit qui pacem peterent. *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace.*

(b) A *reason*: Me miseram, qui hoc fecerim. *Wretched that I am for having done this.*

(c) A *concession*: Caesar, qui haec videret, tamen copias eduxit. *Caesar, though he saw this, led out his forces.*

It is much more widely used to express a *Characteristic*: as,

Non is sum qui hoc faciam. *I am not the one to do it* (qui = ut ego, *that I*). Here Is qui has the force of *such as to, of such a kind as to.*

2. A Rel. Clause of Characteristic is used after the following:

(a) Certain *indefinite expressions*: Sunt qui (*there are some who*), reperiuntur qui (*there are found who*), nemo est qui (*there is no one who*), quis est qui? (*who is there who?*), nihil est quod (*there is nothing that*), est cur (*there is reason why*), quotusquisque est qui (*how few there are who*): as,

Sunt qui hoc dicant. *There are some who say this.*

Nihil est quod dicere velim. *There is nothing that I wish to say.*

Nihil est cur irascare. *There is no reason why you should be angry.*

Nil habet quo se defendat. *He has nothing to defend himself with*

(b) After dignus (*worthy*), indignus (*unworthy*), and idoneus or aptus (*fit*): as,

Dignus est qui ametur. *He is worthy to be loved* (= *he is worthy that he should be loved*).

(c) After Quam with a Compar.: as,

Probior est quam qui te fallat. *He is too honest to deceive you.*

Maior est quam cui resisti possit. *He is too great to be resisted* (= *greater than to whom it can be resisted*).

Note.—Possum, *I can*, is used impersonally only when joined with a Pass. Inf.

(d) In Neg. and Interrog. sentences, after Tam, sic, adeo (*so*), or tantus (*so great*): as,

Nemo tam saevus est qui haec faciat. *No one is so cruel as to do this.*

Quis est tam stultus qui id credat? *Who is foolish as to believe it?*

3. Instead of Qui non, quin (*who not*) with the Subjun., is often used, as,

Nemo est quin sciat. *There is no one who does not know.*

4. Qui with the Subjun. is also used in a restrictive sense (= if): as,

Nemo, qui quidem prudens sit, hoc dubitat. *No one who at least is a man of sense, doubts this = if, at least, he is.*

So, too: Nemo, quod sciam. *No one, as far as I know.*

EXERCISE 31.

1. There are certain men whom we do not care to see often. 2. Who is there who does not hate the coward? 3. Is there anyone so hard as not to be moved by these tears? 4. No one doubts that the soul is immortal. 5. Nothing is so obscure that it cannot be found out by inquiry (*go and out of quaero*). 6. Is anyone so foolish that he can understand nothing? 7. He is not the man to forget his friends. 8. I will send you a man to tell you the truth. 9. Is he a fit person to be trusted? 10. He was unworthy to obtain such an office. 11. You have committed a crime too great to be forgiven. 12. How few there are who like him! 13. Why did you not ask him what he was doing? 14. This is too difficult to understand. 15. I did not doubt that he had spoken the truth. 16. Although the king was dying, he ordered them to surrender the city. 17. He used to say that knowledge was better than gold. 18. We had to wait there many days in order to refit our ships. 19. A magistrate wishes to know what the citizens think. 20. O happy Achilles who did'st have Homer for a herald (*praeco; 2, 5*).

§ 32. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

1. A conditional sentence contains (*a*) a main clause, (*b*) an adverbial clause stating the condition on which the statement of the main clause is, or would be, true. The clause containing the condition is called the *if* clause.

2. The common types of the conditional sentence are as follows:—

IND. IN BOTH CLAUSES.

If-Clause.	Main Clause.
1. Si quis haec dicit,	errat.
If anyone says this,	*he is wrong.*
Si quis haec dixit,	erravit.
If anyone said this,	*he was wrong.*
2. Si quis haec dicet (or dixerit),	errabit.
If anyone says (lit., *shall say* or	
have said) *this,*	*he will be wrong.*

SUBJUN. IN BOTH CLAUSES.

3. Si quis haec dicat,	erret.
If anyone should say this,	*he would be wrong.*
4. Si quis haec diceret,	erraret.
If anyone were saying this (now),	*he would be wrong.*
5. Si quis haec dixisset,	erravisset.
If anyone had said this (in the	
past),	*he would have been wrong.*

Note.—Instead of the Eng. Pres. referring to the future (as in type 2), Latin uses the Fut., or—if the action of the verb in the if-clause is over before that of the main verb begins—the Fut.-Perf.

3. *Any*, after Si or nisi, is quis: as,

Si quis ita fecerit, poenas dabit. *If anyone does so, he will be punished* (lit., *shall have done so*).

4. *Unless* (or *if not* with the force of *unless*) is Nisi or ni: as,

Nisi arma sumpsisses, deletus esses. *Unless you had taken up arms, you would have been destroyed.*

Nisi medicus adesset, puer moreretur. *If the doctor were not here, the boy would be dying.* But when *if not* cannot be turned into *unless*, it is expressed by si non: as,

Cur mihi noces, si ego tibi non noceo? *Why do you harm me, if I do not harm you?*

5. *Whether . . . or*, introducing alternative conditions, is expressed by Sive (seu) . . . sive (seu): as,

Sive adfuisti sive abfuisti, nihil dico. *Whether you were present or absent, I say nothing.*

Note.—Sive . . . sive must be distinguished from Utrum . . . an, introducing a dependent double question and used as the subject or object of a verb: as,

Utrum velit an nolit, rogo. *I ask whether he is willing or unwilling* (*noun clause*).

6. *But if*, introducing a corrected condition, is Sin (= si + ne, *if not*; *it not* without a verb is Si minus (or, rarely, si non): as,

Si rogas, respondeo; sin non rogas, taceo. *If you ask, I answer; but if you don't ask, I hold my peace.*

Si haec feceris, gaudebo; si minus, aequo animo feram. *If he does it, I shall be glad; if not, I shall bear it with patience.*

7. Nisi forte (or vero) is often used to express an ironical objection: as,

Nisi forte existimatis eum dementem fuisse. *Unless indeed you think that he was mad* (= *you surely do not think*).

8. The verb of the if-clause in Indir. Narr. is in the Subjun.: as,

Dicit se, si quid habeat, dare. *He says that, if he has anything, he gives it* (direct = *If I have anything, I give it*).

Dixit se, si quid haberet, dare. *He said that, if he had anything, he gave it* (secondary sequence).

EXERCISE 32.

1. If I had set out that night, I should have seen him. 2. If he is in command of the army (*praesum*), the country will be safe. 3. If you should ask me that, I should answer nothing. 4. If I am present, I shall speak. 5. If I knew the name of that flower, I should value it more highly. 6. If dogs barked in the daylight (*luce*), they would be killed. 7. Whether he reads or writes, he wastes no time. 8. Will you ask them how much I ought to give? 9. Whether you were absent or whether you were present, you will be punished. 10. Economy *parsimonia*, is the art of using money with moderation (*moderate*). 11. Even a short life is long enough for (*ad*) living well. 12. Time would fail me to tell all. 13. By burning his ships, he taught the army that he would not return unless victorious. 14. Wait till you know which of the two ought to be assisted. 15. When he learns the danger, he will advise you not to leave (*excedo*) the camp.

16. We must either conquer or die.   17. We must conquer our enemies by courage.   18. Asked why he had learned nothing, he said that he never had an opportunity.   19. He ordered them to refit the ships and follow him.   20. I warned them that a plot was being laid (*facio*) against the state.

§ 33. CLASSIFICATION OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

1. Conditional Sentences may be divided into three classes:
I. Simple present and past conditions.
II. Future conditions.
III. Conditions contrary to fact.

Class I. includes conditional sentences in which nothing is said as to the fulfilment of the condition. These are easily recognised when the other two classes can be distinguished. They have the Ind. in both clauses: as,

Pecuniam si habeo, do. *If I have money, I give it.*

Pecuniam si habui, dedi. *If I had money, I gave it.*

Note.—Si rarely stands at the head of the sentence. Hence the common use of Quodsi *but if* for si, at the head of a si-clause.

2. Class II. includes those in which the fulfilment of the condition is referred to the future. Of these there are two types:—

(*a*) Where the condition is regarded as likely to be fulfilled: as,

Pecuniam si habebo, dabo. *If I have* (Old Eng., *shall have*) *money, I will give it.*

Here the Fut. Ind. is used in both clauses. But the Fut.-Perf. is used in the *if*-clause, when the action of the Vb. of that clause is to be represented as over before that of the main Vb. begins: as,

Hoc si fecerit, morietur. *If he does this* (lit., *shall have done*), *he will die.*

(*b*) Where the condition is regarded as unlikely to be fulfilled. Such sentences have in English *would* or *should* in the main clause: as,

Pecuniam si habeam, dem. *If I should have money, I would give it.*

Here the Pres. Subjun. is used in both clauses.

3. Class III. includes those in which the condition is represented as not fulfilled (contrary to fact). Of these also there are two types:

(a). Where the condition is referred to the present. These have in English the word *now* (expressed or understood) in both clauses: as,

Pecuniam si haberem, darem. *If I had money (now), I would give it (now).*

Here the Imperf. Subjun. is used in both clauses.

(b) Where the condition is referred to the past. This type has in English *would have* in the main clause: as,

Pecuniam si habuissem, dedissem. *If I had had money, I would have given it.*

Here the Pluper. Subjun. is used in both clauses.

Note 1.—In sentences of Class III., the *if*-clause may refer to the past, while the main clause refers to the present, or *vice versa:* as, Illi si haec fecissent, viverent. *If they had done this, they would now be alive.*

Note 2.—The first type of Class III. is also used of *past* time to express *continuous action:* as, Haec si sentirent, sapientes essent. *If they had held these views, they would have been wise.*

4. *Provided that* is expressed by Dum, by modo, or by dummodo, all with the Subjun. (with ne for non in Neg. clauses): as,

Veniant dum ne maneant. *Let them come, provided that they do not remain.*

EXERCISE 33.

1. If you wish, you can do it. 2. If my slaves feared me in this way, I would leave my house. 3. Leap from the ship, soldiers, unless you wish to betray the eagle to the enemy. 4. If they should say this, they would be telling a falsehood. 5. If I had thought this the best thing to be done, I would not have given him an hour to *(ad)* live. 6. If you follow them to the river, they will all be captured. 7. As long as he lived, he opposed me. 8. If you wish, I will go away; but if you prefer it, I will remain. 9. If he were alive, we should hear his voice. 10. If you had not come to the army, you would have been seen by the magistrate. 11. Provided that there is a wall between you and me, I shall be free from fear. 12. They fought in such a narrow sea, that their ships could not be deployed *(explico)*. 13. Provided that he is not killed, I shall be content. 14. I believe that no one ever assisted his friend as much as he.

15. You ought to have returned home, as soon as you heard of your brother's death. 16. Will you ask him which of the two was the first (14, 11) to propose (*fero*) the law? 17. Do not touch me. 18. He asked whether his shield was safe. 19. Go when you like (*volo*). 20. No one knew whether he was alive or dead. 21. Speak to him; he will be easily persuaded.

§ 34 MAY AND MIGHT IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

PERSONAL AND DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The Latin Subjunctive represents (as has been seen) the English *May* and *Might*:

(a) In Final Clauses: as, Venio ut urbem videam. *I come that I may see the city.*

(b) In Wishes: as, Moriar. *May I die!*

But, as a usual thing, *May* and *Might* are represented in Latin by Possum (*I can*) and licet (*it is allowed*): as,

Fieri potest ut fallar. *I may be deceived.*

Id facere potui. *I might have done it.*

Licet vobis ire. *You may go* (permission).

Hoc mihi facere licuit. *I might have done it.*

Licet vobis esse ignavis. *You may be cowards.*

Licet esse ignavos. *We may be cowards* (lit., *it is allowed to be cowards*).

Note.—An Adj. joined to an Inf. with licet is in the Dat., if the noun or pronoun is expressed; if not, in the Acc.

2. *Ought or should*, expressing *moral obligation*, is debeo or oportet with the Inf.: as,

Pecuniam solvere debes. *You ought to pay the money.*

Id videre debui. *I ought to have seen it.*

Note.—The Eng. Perf. Inf. used after the verbs of paragraphs 1 and 2, is expressed in Latin by the Pres. Inf.

3. Duty, obligation, etc. are usually expressed by the Pass. Periphr. Conjug. (§ 17).

4. Both *licet* and *oportet* may take the Subjun. (with or without *ut*): as,

Eum, ut libet, ludas licet. *You may fool him as you please* (ut omitted).

9

Ex scientia redundet oportet eloquentia. *Eloquence must flow from knowledge* (ut omitted).

PERSONAL AND DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

5. The pronouns of the 1st and 2nd persons are rarely expressed, except for emphasis or contrast: as,

Ego laudo sed tu vituperas. *I praise, but you blame* (pronouns expressed because in antithesis).

Ego illud dicam. *For my part I will say this* (pronoun emphatic).

The Pers. pronouns of the 3rd person are wanting, but are supplied by the Demonstratives Is, hic, or ille, *this, that*.

Note.—Is expresses the article *a* or *the*, used emphatically before a relative: as, Redde eum librum quem abstulisti. *Restore the book which you took away.*

6. The three Demonstrative pronouns (hic, iste, ille) refer respectively to the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd persons: as, Hic liber, *this book* (near me); ista opinio, *that opinion of yours;* illis diebus, *in those days.*

In phrases like *This is life* (Haec est vita), the Demonstrative agrees in Latin with the predicate noun: as,

Ea demum est vera felicitas. *This (and this only) is true happiness.*

7. Iste is used contemptuously: as, Iste homo, *that fellow.* It is also used of the other party to a suit, while *hic* means, *my client.*

8. Ille is joined to quidem (*indeed*), with a *concessive* force: as,

Non multum ille quidem nec saepe dicebat, sed Latine loquendo cuivis erat par. *He did not speak much or often, but in speaking Latin he was equal to any one* (=although he did not . . . yet . . .).

It often begins a sentence to refer to a noun or noun-clause coming after: as,

Scitum est illud Catonis. *The following saying of Cato is good.*

Illud vereor ne fames in urbe sit. *This is what (the following is what) I am afraid of, that there will be famine in the city.*

In phrases like *My house and that of my friend,* Latin omits the Demonstrative: as,

Domus mea et amici veniit. *My house and that of my friend have been sold.*

Note.—If a change of case is required, the noun is repeated: as, Liberi nostri cariores sunt amicorum liberis. *Our children are dearer than those of our friends.*

9. Idem, *same,* is often used to express *also, at the same time, at once:* as,

Cicero orator erat īdemque philosophus. *Cicero was an orator and, at the same time, a philosopher.*

10. Ipse, *self,* may be added for emphasis to a noun, pronoun, or numeral: as,

Se ipsum interfēcit, *he killed himself,* trīgintā ipsī diēs, *exactly thirty days;* adventū ipsō hostēs terruit, *by his mere (very) arrival, he frightened the enemy.*

Ipse is also added in the Gen. to a possessive pronoun to express the English *own:* as,

Mea ipsīus culpa, *my own fault;* vestra ipsōrum amīcitia, *your own friendship.*

This Gen. is in apposition with the Gen. implied in the Possessive (mea = meī, *of me,* Gen. of ego).

EXERCISE 34.

1. A law should be short.   2. Tell me when that friend of yours intends to set out for Rome.   3. It may be that he has advised them to surrender (*se dedo*).   4. You might have left the city immediately (use *possum*).   5. If you are fortunate, you will see the same honours in your own house as (14, 11) you see to-day in that of your sister's.   6. He thought these people equal to the rest (*ceteri*) in valor.   7. You have a small town, no doubt (34, 8), but a very prosperous one.   8. The very fear of danger often brings (*affero*) disaster.   9. He said that he would write to us himself.   10. You will hardly know (*cognosco*) yourselves.   11. Does not the following fact (*res*) show his worth, that all the cities have surrendered to him?   12. My client (*hic*) begs (21) you to consider what crimes the other party *iste* has himself committed.   13. Restore us the freedom you have yourselves snatched from us (6, 3).   14. Ask him why he has sent us the same things as before.   15. I for my part exhort you to obey the laws.   16. Do not tell me (15, 2) that they have lost the opportunity of seizing the hill.   17. Do not inquire with regard to (*de*) that matter of yours.   18. This ought to have been done.   19. They have fled from the fields to save themselves from the fire, use *causa*.   20. I did not know whether he praised or blamed us.

§ 35. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

1. A Reflexive pronoun is one that refers to the subject of a verb: as,

Tu te laudas. *You praise yourself.*

Te is a reflexive, referring to the subject of laudas.

The 1st and 2nd personal pronouns are used as reflexives of the first and second persons: as,

Ego me laudo, *I praise myself;* vos vos laudatis, *you praise yourselves.*

Note.—The suffix -met is added to a reflexive for emphasis: as, Contemnisne temet? *Do you despise yourself?*

2. The forms Sui, sibi, se, usually refer to the Subject of the main verb: as,

Brutus se interfecit. *Brutus killed himself.*

Dixit se id fecisse. *He said that he had done it* (se refers to the subject of dixit).

Cicero effecerat ut Curius consilia Catilinae sibi proderet. *Cicero had managed that Curius should betray Catiline's plans to him* (Cicero).

3. If it may do so without ambiguity, Se may be used quite generally as a reflexive of the 3rd Pers.: as,

Reliquos se convertere cogit. *He compels the rest to turn* (themselves).

Haec per se expetenda sunt. *These things are to be sought in themselves* (*i.e.,* for their own sake).

So too: Sui compos. *master of one's self;* sui fiducia, *self-confidence.*

4. When *him, her,* etc., refer to the Subject of a Subord. clause, Ipse is generally used: as,

Rogavit ut eos dederent qui ipsos prodidissent. *He asked them to surrender those who had betrayed them* (se would refer to the subject of rogavit).

5. The rules for the use of Suus are the same as for the use of se.

(*a*) Suus usually refers to the subject of the main verb: as,

Eos gladio suo interfecit. *He killed them with his sword.*

(*b*) If no ambiguity arises, Suus is used without any reference to the subject of the verb: as,

Jussit eos ad sua quemque signa redire. *He ordered them to return each to his own standard.*

Note.—Quisque, *each*, is often joined in this way with suus.

So too: Sui cives, *one's own countrymen;* suā sponte, *of one's own accord.*

5. *His, her,* etc., referring to the Subject of a Subord. clause, are expressed by the Gen. of Ipse: as, Rogavit ne se dederent iis qui inimici sui et ipsorum essent. *He begged them not to give him up to those who were his enemies and theirs.*

Note.—In turning into Latin *He killed Caius with his own sword i.e., Caius's sword),* it is better to make Caius the Subject of a Pass. verb, in order that suus may, as usual, refer to the subject: as,

Caius gladio suo ab eo interfectus est. *Caius was killed by him with his own sword.*

6. *His, her, its, their,* are otherwise expressed by the Gen. of Is: as, Dixit se eorum amicum esse. *He said that he was their friend.*

Note.—The Possessive is not expressed in Latin, if no ambiguity arises from its omission: as, Patri pārē. *Obey your father.*

7. Inter se may be used to express the English Reciprocal pronoun *one another:* as,

Furtim inter se aspiciebant. *They looked furtively at one another.*

Inter se differunt. *They differ from one another.*

EXERCISE 35.

1. Show yourselves worthy of your ancestors. 2. He says that he does not pity you but himself. 3. He said that there were many in the city who would never forgive themselves. 4. We all know that the man, who cannot restrain himself, cannot restrain his soldiers. 5. None would deny that his character changes as old age approaches (abl. abs.). 6. I believe that he was angry because they asked him to pay back (*reddo*) the money. 7. He said that birds returned to their homes in the spring. 8. They have sold themselves for gold. 9. No (*nemo*) wise man behaves (*se gerere*) so. 10. You know how to praise yourselves. 11. He said that riches were dearer to him than honor. 12. They put him to death before he was able to harm the credit (*fides*) of the country. 13. We remained in the city until we were able to elect the man we favored. 14. They have always differed from each other. 15. Do not defer until your opportunity is lost. 16. If they had given him the money, nothing would have

remained for us.   17. If he should pay the debts of the poor, he would soon have the greatest influence (use *multum valeo*) with them. 18. I believe that neither of these two can talk Latin.   19. He asked me whether I was tired.   20. To my question (say *to me asking*) whether he was tired he answered, No.

§ 36. QUIS, QUISQUAM, AND QUIVIS.

1. The English *Any* is expressed by the Indef. pronoun Quis, quae (or qua), quid (or quod), after Si (*if*), nisi (*unless*), ne, num, quo or quanto: as,

Si quis hoc dicit, errat.   *If anyone says this, he is wrong.*
Nisi quid vis, abibo.   *Unless you want anything, I will go away.*
Ne quid nimis facias.   *Do not do anything to excess.*
Num quis infantibus irascitur?   *Is anyone angry with children?*
Quo quis callidior est, eo invisior.   *The more cunning anyone is, the more hated he is.*

Note 1.—Instead of Quis, quisquam may be used for an emphatic *any*: as, Si quisquam sapiens erat, is erat.   *If anyone was wise, he was.*

Note 2.—Of the two Neut. Sing. forms, quid is a pronoun, quod, an Adj.: as, Vereor ne quid subsit doli, *I am afraid lest any guile may lurk beneath*; num quod officium aliud maius est? *is any other duty greater?*

2. *Any*, in the sense of *any you please, every*, is quivis (from quis, *any*, and vis, *you wish*): as,

Non cuiusvis est adire Corinthum.   *It is not every one who can visit Corinth* (3, 2).

3. After a negative, *any* is quisquam, or—if used as an Adj.— ullus: as,

Nec quisquam hoc dicet.   *Nor will anyone say this.*
Nec ulla res unquam atrocior fuit.   *Nor was anything ever more atrocious.*

Note.—Owing to the prominent place given in Latin to the negative, Nec quisquam, nec ullus, often begin a sentence.

4. Quisquam and ullus are also used for *any* after *virtual negatives* such as vix (*scarcely*), sine (*without*), and comparatives and interrogatives that expect the answer No: as,

Vix quisquam reperiri potuit. *Scarcely anyone could be found.*

Hoc sine ullo auxilio feci. *I have done this without any help.*

Fortior fuit quam quisquam amicorum. *He was braver than any of his friends* (= *none of his friends was so brave*).

Num tu me existimas ab ullo malle mea scripta lĕgi quam a te? *Do you think that I prefer my writings to be read by anyone rather than by you?*

5. *Any*, where it means *some*, is Aliquis or, rarely, quispiam: as,

Si ad aliquam spem commodi Fortuna nos reservavit, bene est. *If Fortune has reserved us for some hope of advantage, it is well.*

Nemo est sine aliqua virtute. *No one exists without some virtue.*

6. Other compounds of the indefinite Quis are:

(*a*) Quidam, *a certain one, a,* used of a person or thing known to the speaker but not fully described: as,

Tempore quodam quidam homo Aesōpo lapidem impēgit. *Once upon a time a certain man threw a stone at Aesop.*

Note.—Quidam is frequently used to apologise for the use of a bold or figurative expression: as, In vigiliā quadam mansi *I kept (as it were) upon the watch.*

(*b*) Nescio quis, *some or other,* used as a single word: as,

Nescio quis prope me loquitur. *Somebody or other is speaking near me.*

Hoc nescio quo pacto contigit. *This, in some strange way, has happened.*

(*c*) Quisque, *each, every.* Quisque never begins a sentence: as,

Quod cuique contingit, id quisque teneat. *What falls to each, let each person keep.*

Quisque is frequently joined to the reflexive suus, in which case it is written after, never before, suus: as,

Omnes suam quisque domum rediērunt. *All returned each to his own home.*

It is frequently found with a Superlative: as,

Ex philosophis optimus quisque confitetur multa se ignorare. *All the best of the philosophers admit that they are ignorant of many things.*

(*d*) Ecquis, which is often used instead of Num quis, to express impatience: as,

Ecquis hoc ostium aperiet? *Will anyone open this door?*

(c) Quisnam, *who, pray?* which is frequently used for Quis in questions, to express impatience: as,

Quidnam tibi negotii fuit in meis aedibus? *What business had you, pray, in my house?*

EXERCISE 36.

1. Scarcely any letters can reach us.   2. All loyal men (use *bonus*) seemed to be angry with us.   3. If all the good have perished, who is worthy to govern the country?   4. They felt that they could do anything to prevent Caesar from becoming king.   5. It is not everyone's fortune to attain such distinction.   6. Can anyone believe that he was prevented from writing?   7. No one will attempt anything without some assistance.   8. I thought that he was more learned that any of his contemporaries *aequalis*.   9. Training *disciplina* improves any mind however weak.   10. Do not hesitate to say whether you need any help.   11. I am afraid that some disaster is threatening (*impendeo*).   12. They begged that some part of their work might be reduced (*minuo*).   13. I am willing to send some one to find out what is going on.   14. Some poet or other has said that ill got (*male parta*) is ill spent (use *dilabor*).   15. Do you think that justice ever injured anyone?   16. Let each one keep his own.   17. They say that he wishes to seem somebody.   18. Whenever (28, 6) he heard anything of that kind, he always said that the story (*res*) was well invented.   19. I saw one (*quidam*) of the soldiers running away (*inf.*).   20. Tell the citizens whether you intend to support (*faveo*) him or not.   21. Whether we support him or not, he will be elected.

§ 37. THE INFINITIVE.

1. The Infinitive is a neuter noun and is often used as the subject or object of a verb: as,

Humanum est errare.   *To err is human.*

2. The Subject of the Inf., if indefinite, is omitted: as,

Incolumem redire licet.   *One may return unhurt.*

3. Many verbs take an Inf. after them to complete their meaning: as,

Vincere scis; victoriā uti nescis.   *You know how to win a victory; you do not know how to use one.*

Such verbs are called modal verbs (§ 1, 3).

4. The Pres. Inf. is often used instead of the Impf. Ind. *when a series of actions is described:* as,

Caesar cotidie eos frumentum flagitare. *Caesar kept importuning them daily for corn.*

Pars cedere, alii insequi; neque signa neque ordines observare. *Some retired, others advanced, they observed neither standards nor ranks.*

This is called the *Historic Inf.* It is common in Livy.

5. The Subject of the Inf. is in the Acc.: as,

Te hoc facere mirum est. *That you do this is strange* (lit., *you to do this* = *that you should do this*).

Note.—*Should* is usually added to the corresponding *that*-clause in English: as,

Deorum est domos nostras patēre hospitibus. *It is a goodly thing that our houses should be open to strangers.*

6. An Inf., when depending upon an adj. or adv., is usually Pass.: as,

Optimum visum est consulem revocari. *It seemed best that the consul should be recalled.*

Satis erat fugam eorum telis impediri. *It was sufficient that their flight should be checked by missiles.*

7. After verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, the *Acc. with Inf.* is used as explained in § 5.

TENSES OF THE INF. IN INDIRECT NARRATION.

8. The tense of the Inf. in Indir. Narr. does not change like the tense in the English *that*-clause, after a past tense: as,

Dixit nivem esse albam. *He said that snow was white* (direct = nix est alba, *snow is white*).

Dixit eos non ignoturos. *He said that they would not forgive* (direct = non ignoscent, *they will not forgive*).

Dixit eos cotidie dormiisse. *He said that they used to sleep every day* (direct = dormiebant, *they used to sleep*).

Dixit urbem munitam esse. *He said that the city had been fortified* (direct = urbs munita est, *the city has been fortified*).

Note.—The Perf. Inf. represents both the Impf., the Perf., and Plpf. Ind., of direct narration.

Note.—The Pres. Inf. in Indirect is used for the Impf. of Direct in speaking of an event that happened within one's own knowledge: as, Memini Tiberim corporit [as] completi. *I remember the Tiber being filled with bodies.*

9. In translating English Indir. Narr. into Latin, it is necessary to find the tense of the Eng. Direct. *The tense of the main verb of the Direct is the tense of the Inf. in the Indir.:* as,

He said that he would go with the Tenth legion alone. Dixit se cum sola decima legione iturum (direct = ibo, *I will go*).

He said that he had learnt by experience. Dixit se experientiā didicisse (direct = didici, *I have learnt*).

He said that the gods were the friends of man. Dixit deos hominum amicos esse (direct = di amici sunt, *the gods are friends*).

EXERCISE 37.

1. He says that to die for the country is glorious. 2. He said that it was his to obey. 3. He thought that the end of life was near for all. 4. All know that a poet is born and not made. 5. Not to be covetous (*cupidus*) is money. 6. After the war was finished they ordered that anyone who had plundered should be put to death. 7. I believe that he gives little money to the poor. 8. He says that he will lead them back to camp at dawn. 9. He told us that he could not write Latin (*Latine*). 10. Did he say that he was a Roman citizen ? 11. I returned as quickly as possible (*quam celerrime*), but could not find anyone in the house. 12. There was no doubt that many of the enemy had been drowned (*absumo*) in the river. 13. All expected that he would attack the next day. 14. He said that to have faithfully studied the liberal arts, refined the manners (*emollio*). 15. It was reported that he was pressing on (*contendo*) to seize the city. 16. They answered that our credit (*fides*) had been much injured in the Provinces. 17. He ordered it to be announced that he wished the road to be opened. 18. He said that before we could make war again, we must prepare another army. 19. By defeating them in two battles and capturing two camps, he easily persuaded the enemy to make peace. 20. Caesar determined that the army should return home.

§ 38. THE INFINITIVE CONTINUED. VERBS OF HOPING.

1. Verbs meaning *to hope, promise, swear* or *undertake*, are followed by a Fut. Inf. and not a Pres. Inf. as in English: as,

Sperat se diu victurum, *he hopes to live a long time;* iuro me haec facturum, *I swear to do it;* promittit se venturum, *he promises to come.*

Note.—After such verbs, the Acc. of the pronoun must be used before the Inf.

2. The Inf. is used in Exclamations: as,

Non es pudēre verberare senem. *To think of their not being ashamed to beat an old man!* (sc. doleo: I grieve that it does not shame them).

Note.—The suffix -ne may be added to the first word: as, Mene abiisse nullo salutato? *To think of my having gone away, without bidding good-bye to anyone!*

3. The use of a verb of *Saying* parenthetically is not common in Latin. Thus:

You were absent, he thought is, Putavit te abesse.

Note.—Inquit, *says he*, is an exception. It is used to introduce the exact words of a speaker: as,

"Dicam tibi," inquit, "omnia." *"I will tell you,"* says he, *"everything."*

4. In the use of the Acc. with Inf., care is taken to avoid the ambiguity that may arise from joining a subject and an object together. Thus:

Aio te Romanos vincere posse = *I say that you can conquer the Romans* or *I say that the Romans can conquer you.*

To avoid ambiguity the Pass. may be used: as, Aio Romanos a te vinci posse. *I say that the Romans may be conquered by you.*

5. The Plpf. Pass. in Indirect becomes the Perf. Part.+fuisse; the Fut.-Perf. Pass. becomes the Perf. Part.+fore: as,

Dicit urbem oppugnatam fuisse priusquam adveniret. *He says that the city had been attacked before he arrived.*

Dicit debellatum mox fore. *He says that the war will soon be over.*

6. Many verbs have no Supine and, therefore, no Fut. Inf. (Act. or Pass.) which is formed from the Supine. Such verbs form the Fut. Inf. by means of Fore or futurum esse (*to be about to be*) and Ut with the Subjun.: as,

Dicit fore ut id nobis contingat. *He says that it will happen to us.*

Dixit fore ut id nobis contingeret. *He said that it would happen to us.*

Dicit fore ut haec poscantur. *He says that these things will be asked.*

Dixit fore ut haec poscerentur. *He said that these things would be asked.*

Note.—This construction is often used (as more convenient) even with verbs that have a Supine: as,

Dixit fore ut rex mitteretur. *He said that the king would be sent.*

EXERCISE 38.

1. He exclaimed, while dying, that the gods would avenge him. 2. He hopes to do something for the country. 3. I saw that each of them was treasuring the danger by his own tears. 4. We all hoped that he would recover. 5. To think that I should be here and you in Italy! 6. I believe that he will gladly learn it. 7. To live honorably is to live happily. 8. I believe that then this empire will have been destroyed. 9. "Go forth from a city," says he, "where you are envied by all." 10. They were afraid that they would be thrown from the Rock (26). 11. To think that he should estimate the lives of his countrymen at such a small price! 12. Even if you should elect the same magistrates again, they would never consent (*volo*) to propose this law again. 13. If anyone had injured me, I should not have avenged myself by violence. 14. They said that he was too good a man to be lost in that way (31, 2). 15. Does not the sun by its motion measure out the course of the year? 16. He hoped to be able to kill the king and seize the sovereignty. 17. Such good men are worthy of all praise (12, 5). 18. He said that the city had been taken before they arrived. 19. To think, Terentia, that you are thus annoyed *etc.*, and that it should happen through my fault (use *fieri*). 20. He used to say that, in the midst of arms, the laws were silent.

§ 39. COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

1. A Comparative adverbial clause expresses *agreement* (or the opposite) with the statement of the main clause: as,

Ut sementem feceris, ita metes. *You shall reap according as you do* (lit., *shall have done*) *your seeding.*

The following words, used to introduce a Comparative clause, are followed by *ac* or *atque*, before a vowel, *atque*, and the Ind. for *Than*, as, *from*, etc.:

Alius (*other*), aliter or secus (*otherwise*), similis (*like*), dissimilis (*unlike*), par (*same*), pariter or aeque (*equally*), perinde or proinde or iuxta (*just*), pro eo (*in proportion*) as,

Se gerit longe aliter ac tu. *He behaves very differently from you.*
Simili loricâ atque antea utimur. *He uses the same armour as before.*

Amicos aeque ac semet diligere oportet. *We should love our friends as much as ourselves* (lit., *one should*, etc.).

SYNTAX OF QUAM.

2. Unless with the Nom. or Acc., *than* after a Comparative is expressed by Quam and not by the Abl. (§ 10, 1): as,

Nemini tribuit plura quam tibi. *On none has he bestowed more than on you.*

Note 1.—Quam referring to an Acc. is followed by an Acc. by *attraction*: as, Numquam calidiorem quam cum vidi. *I have never seen a cleverer man than he.*

Note 2.—Quam is used after Tam in the sense of *as:* as, Tam mitis est quam tu. *He is as mild as you.*

It is also added to a Superl. to intensify: as, Quam maximam potest vastitatem efficit. *He spreads as wide devastation as possible.*

3. A comparative Adv. is usually followed by Quam: as,

Nihil dulcius quam luscinia cantat. *Nothing sings more sweetly than the nightingale.*

Note.—Two Adjs. or Advs. are often joined idiomatically by quam: as, Ferocius quam prudentius pugnant. *They fight with more spirit than sense.*

Consilia eius celeriora quam tutiora erant. *His plans were more rapid than safe.*

4. Comparative clauses introduced by Quam take the construction of the main clause or the Subjun. with or without Ut: as,

Nec editus saeviit quam satis erat. *Nor did he show any needless cruelty* (lit., *nor was he cruel further than was enough*).

Perpessus est omnia potius quam (ut) indicaret. *He endured everything rather than inform.*

Eum aggrediamur potius quam propulsemus. *Let us attack rather than repel him.*

Note.—In the same way, Quam connects two Infs.: as, Dixit se quidvis potius perpessurum quam exiturum. *He said that he would endure anything rather than go forth.*

5. Comparative clauses of condition involving an *imaginary supposition*, require the Subjun., and unless after a past tense, the Pres. or Perf.: as,

Hic pugnandum est tanquam si pro moenibus Romae pugnetis. *You must fight here as if you were fighting before the walls of Rome* (lit., *should be fighting*).

Honores petunt, quasi honeste vixerint. *They are seeking office, just as if they had lived honorably* (lit., *should have lived*).

But: Eius crudelitatem horrebant, quasi ipse adesset. *They feared his cruelty, as if he had been present himself.*

Note.—This is an apparent violation of the principle of Class III (§ 33) of Conditional sentences. The fulfilment of the condition is viewed as future and improbable (Class II, b).

6. The following conjunctions are joined in this way with the Subjun.: Tanquam si, quasi, velut si, *as if:* as,

Tanquam si hoc difficile sit. *As if this were hard.*

7. The English *the . . . the* with two comparatives (10, 5) is expressed in Latin in two ways:—

a) By Quo . . . eo (or quanto . . . tanto) with two comparatives: as,

Quo (or quanto) quis est melior, eo (or tanto) difficilius suspicatur. *The better a man is, the more difficulty he has in suspecting.*

(b) By Ut quisque . . . ita with two superlatives: as, Ut quisque vir optimus est, ita difficillime suspicatur. *The better a man is*, etc.

Note.—This idiom may be translated: *In proportion as a man is good*, etc., or, *In proportion to a man's goodness*, etc.

8. The following are idiomatic uses of Ut, *as*, with the Ind.:—

(a) Ut fortasse vere, sic parum utiliter respondit. *Though his answer was true, yet it was not very expedient* (*concessive* and *restrictive*).

(b) Valde frugi erat, ut servus. *He was very thrifty for a slave.*

(c) Multum, ut illis temporibus, valuit. *He showed great ability for that time* (*as a speaker*).

(d) Multae etiam, ut in homine Romano, litterae. *A good knowledge of literature, too, for a Roman.*

(e) Pauca, ut semper taciturnus erat, respondit. *With his usual reticence, he made a brief reply.*

(f) Magnus pavor, ut in re tam improvisa, fuit. *The panic was great, as was natural in so unexpected an occurrence.*

EXERCISE 39.

1. I will make him as quiet (*placidus*) as before. 2. You act as if you were afraid (39, 5). 3. He shall be punished as he deserves. 4. I will serve you as though you had bought me for money. 5. You are acting otherwise than I could have wished. 6. The more a man reads, the less often he knows. 7. I spoke just as I felt. 8. Our losses are too great to be estimated (§ 31, 2 c). 9. We receive no news from Asia, just as if the Province were closed. 10. They will give you greater honours than they gave your father. 11. Let us rejoice rather than complain. 12. He adds that he will be killed rather than that I shall be harmed (*violo*). 13. You will then be as happy as I. 14. You think (*sentio*) differently from me about this matter. 15. He fled (*contugio*) to the river before they could seize him. 16. I lived there, just as if I was in my own house. 17. After dismissing the army, he returned to Rome. 18. He sent him into Bactria to prepare food for the army. 19. He always prevented the army from pillaging. 20. Do not take away from this man (6, 3) an office to which he has been raised by the whole people. 21. He is as mild as ever (*tam quam*). 22. As was to be expected in such a crisis (*res*), not a single man (*ne unus quidem*) was unmoved. 23. He was so cowardly that he ran away (*fugio*).

§ 40. VERBS OF EMOTION WITH THE GENITIVE. INTEREST AND REFERT.

1. The five following Impersonal verbs, expressing emotion, take the Acc. of the person feeling, and the Gen. of the source of feeling: as,

Miseret me tui. *I pity you* (lit., *it fills me with pity for you*).

Me non solum paenitet stultitiae sed etiam pudet. *I am not only sorry for my folly but even ashamed of it.*

Me fratris et piget et taedet. *I am annoyed at and disgusted with my brother.*

Note.—These verbs express respectively *to fill* with *pity, annoyance, sorrow, shame,* or *disgust.* They are all transitive. Thus: Eum facti nec paenitet nec pudet. *He feels neither remorse nor shame for his act.*

2. With Interest and refert, *it is of importance to, it concerns,* if the person *to whom* it is of importance is expressed by a noun, the Gen. is used; if by a personal pronoun, the Abl. Sing. Fem. of the corresponding possessive Adj.: as,

Multum regis interest. *It is of much importance to the king.* But: Meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā, interest. *It concerns me, you,* &c.

3. Interest and refert may have as subject an Inf., an Ut-clause, a Ne-clause, a pronoun, or an Indirect question: as,

Omnium interest bene vivere. *It is for the interest of all to live well.*

Multum interest ut copiae nostrae conveniant. *It is of much importance that our forces should assemble.*

Non possum dicere quantum id intersit. *I cannot say how important it is.*

Nihil interest quot sitis. *It makes no difference how many you are.*

Exercise 40.

1. Do you not think that he will be sorry some day? 2. I am sorry to have hurt (*laedo*) your feelings (*animus*). 3. The young man repented of his crime. 4. It is of greater importance to you than to me that this should be done (*inf.*). 5. It is of the greatest concern to all of us that the country should be safe. 6. He thought that it was of no importance to him that we should return home. 7. It was of the utmost importance to us that there should be peace. 8. Is it not of importance to you that I should be well? 9. Will you not tell me at how much you sold your house? 10. It makes no difference to me whether he is alive or not. 11. He values lightly all the dangers of this life. 12. Do not do this or attempt it. 13. Oh, that he had not been present! 14. Tell me why you are so much distrusted by the king. 15. Remember, pray (*tandem*), how he saved the city. 16. Mind you do not return (use *cave ne*). 17. He could not be persuaded by threats to confess. 18. Let us ask him what o'clock it is. 19. It is not in your interest, that the worst citizens should elect the king. 20. I think that he will soon be sorry for his audacity.

§ 41. OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. GERUND WITH PRE-POSITION. ATTRACTION OF VOICE.

1. A Gen. is used with nouns derived from verbs, to denote the *Subject* of the verb implied in the governing noun: as,

Morsus canis. *The bite of a dog.* Here canis represents the subject of the verb mordeo (*bite*) implied in morsus.

This is called the *Subjective Genitive.*

2. A Gen. is also used, with nouns derived from verbs, to denote the *Object of a verb implied in a governing noun:* as,

Timor mortis. *The fear of death.*

Here mortis represents the object of timeo (*I fear*), implied in timor. Thus, Propter mortis timorem = quod timeo mortem (*because I fear death*).

This is called the *Objective Genitive.*

An Obj. Gen. may represent not only an Acc. but (*a*) a Dat., (*b*) an Abl., (*c*) a Prep. and its case: as,

(*a*) Quis enim est optimarum artium studio praestantior?

Who is more distinguished by zeal for liberal cultures (artium studio representing artibus studēre, *to be zealous for culture*).

(*b*) Vitae excessu pericula multa fugit. *By his departure from life, he escaped many dangers* (vitae excessu = vitā excedere).

(*c*) Ea magis ex aliorum contentione quam ipsa per se cognosci possunt.

Those qualities can be understood rather from a comparison with others than independently (aliorum = cum aliis. Lit. – *the race he runs with others*).

Hiemis enim non avaritiae perfugium maiores nostri in sociorum tectis esse voluerunt.

Our ancestors wished that there should be in the homes of our subjects a refuge from winter, not a retreat for rapacity (hiemis – ab hieme; avaritiae = subjective Gen.).

So too: Aditus laudis, *an avenue to distinction* (laudis for ad laudem); fiducia virium, *confidence in strength*, dissensio rei publicae, *disagreement on politics*, contentio honorum, *a struggle for office* (Cf. contendo de).

Note.—Only a Gen. case can regularly depend on a noun in Latin. Thus: *The day for submitting the laws* – dies ferendae legis (Gen.–not ferendae legi (Dat.).

10—

3. The Gerund and Gerundive are used with the prepositions Ad, in, de, e(ex), but rarely with any other: as,

Ad has res conficiendas spatium datur. *Time is given for accomplishing these things.*

In voluptate spernenda virtus cernitur. *Virtue is discerned in the despising of pleasure.*

4. Instead of other prepositions with a Gerund, an equivalent construction is used: as, Damnatus est quia pecuniam cepisset. *He was condemned for taking money.*

Hoc feci, te non sentiente. *I did it without your perceiving it.*

Eum damnant inauditum. *They condemn him without hearing him.*

Nunquam exercitum eduxit nisi explorato locorum situ. *He never led out his army without examining the position of the ground.*

Dicit nec cuiquam persuadet. *He speaks without persuading any one.*

Re infectā rediimus. *We returned without accomplishing anything.*

Cadere illa non possunt ut haec non concidant. *Those cannot fall without these falling with them.*

5. Coepi means both *I begin* and *I began.* The Active form is used when an Active Inf. follows: as,

Urbem aedificare coepit. *He began to build the city.*

The Passive form (coeptus sum) is used when a Pass. Inf. follows: as,

Urbs aedificari coepta est. *The city began to be built.*

This is an example of *Attraction of Voice.*

Compare also: Veteres orationes lĕgi sunt desitae. *The speeches of the olden time have ceased to be read.*

EXERCISE 41.

1. They felt respect (*verecundia*) for (Gen.) neither gods nor men. 2. He said that there was some consolation for their ill-luck. 3. Self-commiseration took possession (*capio*) of their minds. 4. Have they lost all interest (*cura*) in (Gen.) their own condition? (*res*). 5. Discrimination (*discrimen*) between things human and things divine was unimpaired (*salvus*). 6. Man has an immoderate desire for wealth. 7. A decision (*discrimen*) was allowed them with regard to (Gen.) all these matters at once. 8. Are all your plans formed for attacking the enemy? 9. This was their first place of refuge (*recepta-*

ulum from that unlucky field (*pugna*). 10. Instead of replying, you are silent (use *cum*). 11. He said that he had been thanked (use *agere gratias*) by the people because he had not despaired of the country. 12. He was too brave a man to be put to death (31, 2 c). 13. Whether this is in the public interest (*e're publica*) or not, may be questioned; but whether it is or not, it is approved by all. 14. They never saw him without reviling him (use *ut non*). 15. He returned to Athens without waiting for the army. 16. These squabbles (*contentio*) were so disagreeable (*acerbus*) to me that I returned home. 17. We all nearly perished (use *minimum abfuit quin* 25, 5). 18. You cannot condemn the one without acquitting the other 19. I congratulate you on being absent (use *quod*). 20. You had no reason for being away (use *non habeo cur*).

§ 42. SPECIAL IDIOMS: DELIB. SUBJUN. IN INDIR. NARR. —FUT. SUBJ. PASS.—CONNECTING REL. IN INDIR. NARR.—ASSIMILATION.

1. The Deliberative Subjun. after a past tense becomes Impf. in Indirect narration: as,

Nesciebat quo verteret. *He did not know where he should turn* (direct = quo vertam? *Where shall I turn?*)

2. The Fut. Subjun. Pass. and the Fut. Subjun. Act. of verbs that have no Supine, are formed by means of Futurum sit, or esset, with an ut-clause. Thus:

Rogo quando futurum sit ut puer doceatur. *I ask when the boy will be taught.*

Rogavi quando futurum esset ut puer doceretur. *I asked when the boy would be taught.*

Rogo num futurum sit ut puer discat. *I ask whether the boy will learn.*

Rogavi num futurum esset ut puer disceret. *I asked whether the boy would learn.*

3. The Pres. Perf. and the Historic Pres. are frequently regarded as Secondary tenses (§ 22): as,

Rogavi eos ut emerent. *I have asked them to buy.*

Quid petens? Ut servires? *Seeking for what? To be a slave?*

4. A Rel. pronoun in Indirect, when used (as it so frequently is) as a Connective, is joined with the Acc. and Inf.: as, Dixit id cognitum esse omnibus, de quo falsam opinionem ortam esse. *He said that this was known to all and that a false opinion had arisen with regard to it.*

5. A Rel. clause in Indir., when its verb is omitted, has its subject in the Acc.: as,

Dixit se eadem, quae ceteri sentirent, sentire. *He said that he was of the same opinion as the rest.*

But: Dixit se eadem, quae ceteros, sentire.

6. The verb of a Subord. clause, when depending upon a verb in the Subjun., is itself in the Subjun. This is called *Assimilation:* as,

Concedit ut absim cum aliquid agatur. *He allows me to be away when something is going on.*

7. Many verbs in Latin—and especially verbs of *motion*—prefer an impersonal passive use to the English personal use in the active: as,

Ad aedem ventum est. *They came to the temple* (lit., *it was come*).

The English subject is then often expressed by a (or ab) with the Abl.: as,

Ab omnibus ambulatum est. *Everybody walked.*

Note.—This form is found in the Fut. Inf. Pass.: as, Dicit urbem captum iri. *He says that the city will be taken* (lit., *that it is gone to take the city.* Captum, supine).

EXERCISE 42.

1. This man, they tell me (38, 4), was born rich. 2. He did not know what he should do (*deliberative*). 3. I suppose that you are influenced (*moveo*) by the same things as I. 4. He did not know whether he ought to buy it or not. 5. He wondered that one augur did not smile (*surrideo*) when he went past (*praeter*) another (*alter*). 6. He sent them another king, as the one he had sent was useless. 7. You complain that (*quod*) I do not hold the same views as you. 8. He did not know what he ought to answer (*delib.*). 9. He used to say that every one was the architect (*faber*) of his own fortune. 10. No friendship can exist (*esse*) between us, if you remain in Gaul. 11. We asked him whether he would spare the women and children. 12. He begged them not to leave his death

unavenged. 13. He was sent there to consult with regard to *de*> the ransoming *redimo*> of the prisoners *captivus*. 14. You should not always consult your own interests. 15. He asked the doctor whether the youth would recover *use convalesco*. 16. No one will ever forget his native (*patrius*) city. 17. He pitied an army (he said) that was not worthy of a better leader. 18. It is said that after plundering *diripio*> the houses, they set them on fire *use ignem inuero*. 19. Ask him whether he will attack them while they sleep. 20. They are determined not to survive *supersum*> the capture of the city (18, 7). 21. He said that there had been one day between *medius*>, all of which *quem totum*> Galba had given to considering the case *causa*.

§ 43. INDIRECT NARRATION (ORATIO OBLIQUA).

1. The forms of the Inf. in Ind. Narration have been discussed in §§ 37, 8.

2. The verbs of Subord. Clauses in Indir. Narr. are in the Subjun. and the tense of the verb is determined by the Law of Sequence already explained in § 22, 1: as,

Dicit se eos, quos ceperit, domum misisse.   *He says that he has sent home those whom he has captured* (direct—eos quos cepi, domum misi, *those whom I have captured, I have sent home*).

Dixit se eos quos cepisset, domum misisse (ceperit changed to cepisset, in accordance with the Law of Sequence).

3. In changing Direct into Indirect, the Rules for Pronouns and Adverbs are the same as in English:

Thus: *I have sent home to-day those whom I have taken* becomes in Eng. In direct: *He said that he had sent home that day those whom he had taken.* So in Latin:

Quos ego cepi, hodie domum misi becomes in Indir: Dixit se eo die, quos cepisset, domum misisse.

Pronouns of the 1st and 2nd person disappear and become, as in English, pronouns of the 3rd person.   Thus:

ego, nos	become se
meus, noster	" suus
tu, vos	" ille, illi
tuus, vester	" illius, illorum
hic, iste	" ille, is

Adverbs of *present* time become (after a secondary tense) adverbs of *past time*. Thus:—

nunc	becomes iam, tum
heri (*yesterday*)	" pridie (*the day before*)
hodie (*to-day*)	" eo die (*that day*)
cras (*to-morrow*)	" postridie (*next day*)

So:—Hic (*here*) becomes ibi (*there*).

4. The Imperative of Direct is in the Subjun. in Indirect (after a secondary tense, in the Impf. Subjun., in accordance with the Law of Sequence): as,

Ne dubitaret. *Let him not hesitate (he said)* (direct = noli dubitare, ne dubitaveris or ne dubites, *do not hesitate*).

Ne cunctarentur. *Let them not delay (he said)* (direct = ne cunctamini, *do not delay*).

5. Questions that expect an answer are put in the *Subjunctive* in Indirect, rhetorical questions (exclamations and appeals) in the *Inf.*: as,

(Scripsit) quid de praeda faciendum esse censerent? (*He wrote*) *what did they think should be done with regard to the booty?* (direct = quid . . . censetis? *what do you think?*).

Quid esse turpius? cur eos dubitare? *What was more dishonorable? why did they hesitate?* (direct = quid est turpius? cur dubitatis? *what is more dishonorable? why do you hesitate?*)

6. A Fut.-Perf. Ind. in a Subord. clause of Direct narration, becomes, in Indirect, Perf. Subjun. after a primary tense and Pluperf. Subjun. after a secondary: as,

Dicit eum, qui id fecerit, poenas daturum esse. *He says that the one who does this, shall be punished.*

Dixit eum qui id fecisset, poenas daturum esse. *He said that the one who did that, should be punished* (direct = qui id fecerit, poenas dabit, *he who shall have done that, shall be punished*).

7. A Rel. clause in Indir. is in the Ind. when it contains a statement made by the historian himself: as,

Putavit pontem, quem in Rheno fecerat, ruptum esse. *He thought that the bridge which he had built over the Rhine had been broken.*

8. The forms of Indir. Narration are often suddenly introduced by the historians, without the governing verb of *Saying* being expressed: as,

Regulus reddi captivos negavit esse utile: illos enim bonos duces esse. *Regulus said that it was not expedient that the captives should be restored: for that they were good guides.*

Note.—*Nego* is the common Latin word for *I say . . . not.*

EXERCISE 43.

N.B.—The tense of the main verb of Direct is the required tense of the Inf. in Indirect.

1. He promised that he would not be wanting to his friends. 2. He called out (*clamo*) that, as far as he could, he would follow their steps. 3. He declared that the death of the father would not profit (*prosum*) them until (*priusquam*) they had banished the son. 4. He said that he pitied a country that could banish a man of such ability. 5. Did you not think that the women and children whom they had captured ought to have been spared? 6. He was afraid that §26, 1 a nation which had been so shamefully betrayed (*prodo*), would never trust us again. 7. He said that he was ready to die. Must they not all die some day? 8. He declared that they ought to march (use eo, *to go*) at once: that they could easily reach the defile (use *enim*). 9. The law he said forbade anyone to be pardoned who had refused (*nolo*) to obey the magistrates. Let them, therefore, take away all his property (*n. pl.*) from him. 10. He said that no one, who was worthy of his country, held such a view (use *sentio*). Let them lay aside (*pono*) their fear. Would they ever have such an opportunity again? 11. He said that they must not delay longer: within a few days all the allies would revolt. 12. He replied that he could have no friendship with those who had broken their word. 13. He said that loyal friends should be chosen, but that of this kind there were few (use *onus generis*). 14. He said that they had committed crimes too great to be pardoned: let them not expect favor from him. 15. They replied: Caesar was to return to Gaul and dismiss his army (*imperat. in indir.*). 16. They said that they had come there before the Romans. Why did Caesar wish to drive them out? 17. He declared that he,

at any rate, would do his duty to the country. 18. They believed that, what could not be done, should not be attempted. 19. She told him while he was asleep, that he would be chosen consul. Let him, therefore, prepare himself.

§ 44. INDIRECT NARRATION IN REPORTING SPEECHES.

The use of Indirect Narration is much more common in Latin than in English. It is frequently employed by the Roman historians in reporting speeches. Caesar, for example, thus describes an interview with a Swiss envoy :

SPEECH OF THE ENVOY IN DIRECT NARRATION.

"If the Roman people will make peace with us, we will repair to that part of the country and remain where Caesar shall wish us to remain. But if, Caesar, you persist in harassing us with war, remember the Roman reverse of long ago. We have learned from our fathers to fight valorously."

Si pacem, inquit, populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibimus atque ibi erimus ubi Caesar nos esse voluerit. Sin bello persequi, Caesar, perseverabis, reminiscere veteris incommodi populi Romani. Nos a patribus didicimus ut virtute contendamus.

SPEECH OF CAESAR IN DIRECT NARRATION.

"I feel all the less hesitation because I remember the incidents the ambassadors have mentioned. But, if I am willing to forget the insult of long ago, can I lay aside the recollection of more recent wrongs?"

"Eo mihi minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res, quas legati commemoraverunt, memoriā teneo. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci volo, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam deponere possum?"

THE SAME IN INDIRECT NARRATION.

Envoy: If (he said) the Roman people would make peace with them, that they would repair to that part of the country and remain where Caesar should wish them to remain. But if he should persist in harassing them with war, let him remember the Roman reverse of long ago. That they had learned from their fathers to fight valorously.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret,[1] in eam partem (se) ituros[2] atque ibi futuros ubi Caesar eos esse voluisset[3]. Sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur[4] veteris incommodi populi Romani. Se[5] a patribus didicisse ut virtute contenderent.

Caesar: That he felt all the less hesitation because he remembered the incidents the ambassadors had mentioned. But if he was willing to forget the insult of long ago, could he also lay aside the recollection of recent wrongs?

Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati commemorassent, memoriā teneret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num se etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam deponere posse?[6]

Note 1.—Faceret, is in the Subjun. because in a Subord. Cl. in Indir., and Impf. in accordance with the law of sequence.

Note 2.—Ituros, Fut. Inf. for the main verb of direct (in the Fut. Ind.)

Note 3.—Voluisset, Plpf. Subjun. for the Fut.-Pt. of Direct after a past tense.

Note 4.—Reminisceretur, Impf. Subjun. after a past tense for the Imperat. of Direct.

Note 5.—Se, for the nos of Direct.

Note 6.—Num posse, the Inf. of indirect for a rhetorical question indirect.

Exercise 44.

Translate into Latin and then turn into Indirect Narration after *Dixit*:

A.

(*N.B.—The verb of saying implies a question or command and need not be repeated*).

1. I will do what I think is for the public interest (*e re publica*).

2. Seek an opportunity for protracting (*traho*) the war.

3. If we retreat, we shall benefit ourselves; if we stand our ground, we shall benefit the enemy.

4. Why do you disparage (*minuo*) the courage of your leaders?

B.

1. The liberty of the plebs, in whom resides (use *sum*) the whole strength of the nation, has been sold for gold.

2. What do you suppose is the reason (*causa*) for this?

3. Do not forget that you are free men.

4. If you do this (*fut.-pf.*), you will be glad.

C.

1. Rome is laying a heavy burden upon me. 2. I will try to be worthy of the opinion you have of me. 3. How will you enrol (*conscribo*) so many men? 4. Remember that Rome is despised by all. 5. If you defeat them in the field, all will fear you.

D.

1. The hill is held by the enemy. 2. If you wish to make peace, you will send an envoy to Caesar. 3. If we had taken away their ships from them, they would not have attacked us again. 4. Go away and forget your wrongs. 5. What do you want? Why are you asking us for the same things again? 6. Unless you go away, I will consider you all as (*pro*) enemies.

§ 45. THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE IN INDIRECT NARRATION.

1. The rules of Indir. Narration may be applied to the forms of the Conditional Sentence. Thus:

DIRECT.		INDIRECT.
1. Pecuniam si habeo, do.	becomes	Dicit se, si pecuniam habeat, dare.
If I have money, I give it.		*He says that if he has money, he gives it.*
Pecuniam si habui, dedi or (dabam).	"	Dicit se, si pecuniam habuerit, dedisse.
If I had money I gave it.		*He says that if he had money, he gave it.*
2. (*a*) Pecuniam si habebo (or habuero), dabo.	"	Dicit se, si pecuniam habeat (or habuerit), daturum esse.

If I have money, I will give it.	*He says that if he has money, he will give it.*
(b) Pecuniam si habeam, dem. "	Dicit se, si pecuniam habeat, daturum esse.
If I should have money, I would give it.	*He says that if he should have money, he would give it.*
3. (a) Pecuniam si haberem, darem. "	Dicit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum fuisse.
If I had money (now), I would give it.	*He says that if he had money (now), he would give it.*
(b) Pecuniam si habuissem, dedissem. "	.Dicit se, si pecuniam habuisset, daturum fuisse.
If I had had money, I would have given it.	*He says that if he had had money, he would have given it.*

Note 1.—The future (habebo) in the *if*-clause of Direct becomes Pres. Subjun. (habeat) in the Indir., after a primary tense.

Note 2.—The Pres. Subjun. (dem), in the main clause, becomes Fut. Inf. (daturum esse) in Indirect.

Note 3.—The Imperf. and Pluperf. Subjun. in the main clause (*i.e.*, darem and dedissem), are expressed in Indirect by the Fut. Part. with fuisse (*i.e.*, daturum fuisse, *to have been about to give*).

2. After a Secondary tense, the verb of the *if*-clause is changed in accordance with the rules for the sequence of tenses (§ 22). Thus:

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
1. Pecuniam si habeo, do.	becomes Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, dare.
Pecuniam si habui, dedi. "	Dixit se, si pecuniam habuisset, dedisse.
2. (a) Pecuniam si habebo (or habuero, dabo. "	Dixit se, pecuniam haberet (or habuisset), daturum esse.
(b) Pecuniam si habeam, dem. "	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum esse.

3. (a) Pecuniam si haberem,   "   Dixit se, si pecuniam ha-
     darem.   beret, daturum fuisse.

   (b) Pecuniam si habuissem,   "   Dixit se, si pecuniam ha-
     dedissem.   buisset, daturum fuisse.

Note 1.—The Fut.-Perf. in the *if*-clause of Direct, becomes Plu-
perf. Subjun. in Indirect.

Note 2.—For 2 (b), the form, Dixit fore ut, si pecuniam haberet,
daret, is often found (§ 38, 6).

Note 3.—*Would have been*, in Indirect narration, in the main clause
of the conditional sentence of type 3 (b), is expressed by *Futurum
fuisse ut*: as,

Dixit futurum fuisse ut vita multis artibus ornaretur. *He said that
life would have been adorned by many arts* (direct = ornata esset).

Futurum fuisse ut is used also for the Act. Voice in the same type,
3 (b), where a verb has no Supine: as,

Dixit futurum fuisse ut, si venisset, aliquid ipse disceret. *He said
that, if he had come, he would have learned something himself.*

EXERCISE 45.

1. If anyone should attempt (*conor*) it, no one would oppose (*obsto*)
him. 2. Do you think that if anyone had attempted it, we would
have opposed him? 3. He said that, if the harvest was large, the
country would be rich. 4. Do you think that, if he had been so
ignorant of the military art, he would have been victorious that day?
5. I am persuaded that, if he feels regret for his act, they will acquit
(*absolvo*) him. 6. If I had received the letter, I should have hastened
as quickly as possible (*quam + superl.*) to Rome. 7. Although he had
promised to spare them, they were led straightway to death. 8. He
answered that if he had known the danger, he would never have
gone out. 9. If you used your own judgment, you would do better
than anyone. 10. Do you not think that, if he were here, all would
be well? 11. And let no one say that there is no hope anywhere
(*usquam*). 12. If you detain us, we shall arrive too late (*sero*).
13. They sent envoys to ask why we had not assisted them. 14. Do
you think that he is a proper person to be received? (31, 2 b). 15.
They said that he ought to have been appointed *praefectus* to the
army, even if he had been in a private station (*privatus*). 16. I never
believed that he would have been so clever (*sollers*). 17. He said

that if they sent ships to Italy, we should soon know it. 18. He taught us that, even if we could conceal *velas* our acts from the gods, we ought not to act unjustly. 19. He thought it would be useful to him if he should visit *adiret* the island. 20. I knew that, if he had wished to see me, he would have summoned *vocares* me.

§ 46. EXCEPTIONAL FORMS OF THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE.

"Would" and "Would Have" in a Dependent Clause.

1. Instead of the usual forms for the *main* clause, of the Conditional sentence, the following forms in the Indic. are found: –

(*a*) The Act. Periphrastic (§ 20, 2).

(*b*) The Pass. Periphrastic (§ 17, 7).

(*c*) A verb or phrase denoting *duty, possibility*, or *propriety*, like Possum, oportet (*it is necessary*), debeo (*I ought*): as,

(*a*) Quid, si hostes ad urbem veniant, facturi estis? *What would you do, if the enemy should come to the city?* (here facturi estis, *are you likely to do, do you intend to do*, = faciatis, the ordinary form for *would you do*).

(*b*) Si unum diem morati essetis, omnibus moriendum fuit. *If you had delayed a single day, all would have died* (= mortui essent).

(*c*) Si similem hostem habuisset, magna clades accipi potuit. *If he had had a similar enemy, a great defeat might have been sustained.*

Hunc, si ulla pietas in te fuisset, colere debebas. *This man, if there had been any affection in you, you should have honored.*

Si ita putasset, melius ei fuit. *If he had thought so, it would have been better for him.*

Note.—The verb of the main clause, in such cases, is in the Ind. and not, as in the ordinary forms of the Conditional sentence, in the Subjun.

2. Such conditional forms as the above are chiefly employed when the main clause of the Conditional Sentence is put in a Dependent clause: as,

Haud est dubium quin urbem, si possit, capturus sit. *There is no doubt that he would take the city, if he could* (dependent for capiat, *he would take*).

Non dubitavi quin urbem capturus fuerit. *I did not doubt that he would have taken the city* (consecutive sequence; —cepisset, *he would have taken*).

Rogo te quid facturus fueris. *I ask you what you would have done.*

Tanta caedes fuit ut non superfuturus fueris. *So great was the slaughter that you would not have survived.*

And so in the Pass.:

Eo fit ut, hoc si iussissem, clades accipienda fuerit. *Therefore it happens that, if I had given the order, a disaster would have been sustained* (lit. *must have been*).

Note. These examples show the Roman fondness for strict adherence to rule. A grammatical form or mood was devised which would express that a clause was both (a) conditional and (b) consecutive or an indirect question.

3. An *if*-clause with the Subjun. is loosely attached to a single word with the main idea suppressed: as,

Ausculto, si quid dicas. *I am listening to see if you say anything* (i.e., *intending to speak if you should say anything*).

Exspectabat si hostem elicere posset. *He was waiting in the hope that he could draw out the enemy* (i.e., *if he could draw the enemy out, about to fight them*).

Mortem mihi denuntiavit, si pugnavissem. *He threatened me with death in case I fought* (main clause of the conditional sentence contained in mortem:=si pugnaveris, moriēre).

Nuntium ad te misi, si forte non audiisses. *I sent a messenger to you, in case you had not heard* (here the si-clause expresses purpose and therefore has the Subjun.;=*that you might hear*).

EXERCISE 46.

1. What would you do, if they should see you? 2. Tell me what you would do, if they should see you. 3. What would you have done, if they had prevented you from coming? 4. There is no doubt what you have done, if they had prevented you from coming. 5. The enemy were waiting in case our army should cross the river. 6. If you had wished to capture the city a larger army would have been collected. 7. There was no doubt that, if you had wished to capture the city, a larger army would have been collected. 8. Can you doubt that, if his plans had succeeded (*procedo*), we should have

been killed? 9. The whole army might have been (*possum*) destroyed, if the victors had followed up (*persequor*) their victory. 10. I asked them whether, if the rest were killed, he would be likely to escape. 11. There is no doubt that, if you do not return, you will injure all of us. 12. Whether you were willing or unwilling, I shall always be grateful. 13. Even if he had been a stranger, you ought (*debeo*) to have helped him. 14. They poured round in the hope of finding some means of approach (*aditus*). 15. Had he done so, there is no doubt that he would have done it to the public disadvantage (*contra rem publicam*). 16. Why was he exempted (use *solvo*) from the law, in case he should be absent from the city? 17. The enemy were waiting, in the hope that we would cross. 18. There is no doubt that, if I had ordered it, you would have done it. 19. There was no doubt that, if he had not been there, the city would have been taken. 20. You showed what kind of magistrate you would have been. 21. If he had had a larger army, he might (*possum*) have conquered them. 22. Even though you had been falsely suspected (*in suspicionem venire*) still you ought to have pardoned me (use *debeo*)

§ 47. THE NUMERAL.

1. Cardinal numerals are indeclinable except (1) Unus, *one;* duo, *two;* tres, *three;* (2) the hundreds, beginning with ducenti, *two hundred;* (3) the plural of mille, *a thousand.*

2. Mille, *a thousand*, is indeclinable, in the Sing., but in the Pl. it is declined.

Note.—Mille, in the Sing. is either an Adj. or a noun: as, Mille homines or mille hominum, *a thousand men.* In the Pl. it is always a noun: as, Decem millia hominum, *ten thousand men.*

3. Compound numbers like 21, 22, etc., when between 20 and 100, are, written Unus et viginti, duo et viginti, or viginti unus, viginti duo, etc.

Above *one hundred*, the greater number precedes (usually without et): as, Ducenti unus, or ducenti et unus, *two hundred and one:* as,

Caesar Gallorum duo millia quingentos sex cepit. *Caesar captured 2,506 Gauls.*

4. *First, second, third*, in enumerations, is Unus, alter, tertius: as.

E quibus generibus, unum est ex iis qui . . , alterum ex iis, etc. *Of which classes the first consists of those who . . , the second of those, etc.*

5. The ordinals are used in expressing Dates: as,

Anno post urbem conditam septingentesimo quinquagesimo quarto natus est Christus. *Christ was born 754 years after the foundation of the city.*

A.D. millesimo octingentesimo octogesimo tertio = *A.D. 1883.*

Anno urbis conditae quinquagesimo quarto. *In the 54th year of the building of the city (i.e. the beginning of the Roman era; subtract from 754 for year B.C.).*

Quota hora est? Hora prima, secunda, tertia, &c. *What hour is it? The 1st, 2nd, 3rd hour, etc. (i.e. reckoning from sunrise; time was measured by a sun-dial).*

6. The Distributive numerals are used:—

(*a*) To express *So many at a time, so many each:* as, Pueris binos libros donavit. *He gave the boys two books apiece.*

(*b*) To express Multiplication: as, Bis bina quattuor sunt. *Twice two is four.*

(*c*) With substantives that have no Sing. or a different meaning in the Sing. and Pl. respectively: as, Bina (trina) castra, *two (three) camps* (Castrum is *a fort;* duo castra = *two forts*).

Note 1.—With nouns like castra, the Pl. of unus is used for *one,* not singuli: as, Ex unis binas mihi conficies nuptias. *You will make me two weddings out of one.*

Note 2. When the Distributives are used with a numeral adverb, they have the force of cardinals: as,

Ter deni, *thrice ten;* vicies centena, *two thousand.*

7. Fractions with 1 for the numerator are expressed by an Ordinal with pars: as,

Tertia pars, $\frac{1}{3}$; centesima pars, $\frac{1}{100}$ (= 1 per cent); millesima pars, $\frac{1}{1000}$. Dimidium, however, is $\frac{1}{2}$.

8. Where the numerator is one less than the denominator, the Cardinals with partes are used: as,

Duae partes, $\frac{2}{3}$; tres partes, $\frac{3}{4}$.

Tres quintae is $\frac{3}{5}$; quattuor septimae, $\frac{4}{7}$; decumae *(tenths)* tithes.

9. *Ago* is *abhinc*, followed by the words expressing time, in the Acc. or Abl.: as,

Abhinc decem dies (or diebus) Romam profectus est. *He set out for Rome ten days ago.*

Note.—Abhinc precedes the expression of time.

10. The following phrases may be noted:

Decem annos post. *Ten years after* (post is an adverb).

Decem annos ante. *Ten years before.*

Nonaginta annos natus. *Ninety years old.*

Minor decem annos natus. *Less than ten years old.*

Maior decem annos natus. *More than ten years old.*

Priore anno quam e vita excessit. *The year before he died.*

Pridie quam pervenit. *The day before he arrived.*

Postridie quam. . . . *The day after.*

§ 48. THE DAY OF THE MONTH.

1. Three days were used to divide the Roman month: the *Kalends* (Kalendae), *Nones* (Nonae) and *Ides* (Idūs, uum): as,

Idibus Martiis interfectus est. *He was killed on the Ides of March.*

Ad Kalendas solvet. *He will pay by the Kalends.*

Nonis Decembribus. *On the Nones of December.*

The Kalends fell on the 1st, the Nones on the 5th or 7th, and the Ides on the 13th or 15th.

In March, July, October, May, the Ides were on the fifteenth day.

The Nones in these four months fell on the 7th (*i.e.*, the 9th day before the Ides, according to the curious Roman method of reckoning, which, in fixing a day before a point in a series, reckoned in the day from which and the day to which).[1]

In the other eight months, the Ides fell on the 13th and the Nones on the 5th.

After 46 B.C. each month had the same number of days as at present.

2. The names of the twelve Roman months are:

Ianuarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprīlis, Maius, Iunius, Iulius (or Quintīlis), Augustus (or Sextīlis), September(-bris), October, November, December.

[1] That reckoning is from the first of December to the fifth of December.

11 —

These names are all Adjs. and are used in agreement with Kalen-
dae, Nonae, Idus.

3. A particular date is either *on* one of these dividing days or so
many days *before* one of them.

Thus: Kalendis Quinctilibus, *on the 1st of July.*

Nonis Ianuariis, *on the 5th of January.*

Nonis Octobribus, *on the 7th of October.*

Idibus Septembribus, *on the 13th of September.*

Idibus Martiis, *on the 15th of March.*

Other dates are reckoned backwards from the dividing days,
allowance being made, before subtracting, for the Roman method
of reckoning. Thus:

The third day before the Ides of March (15+1−3 = 13) is the *13th
of March.*

Note.—*On the third day before the Ides of March* would naturally
be expressed: Tertio die ante Idus Martias, which, by a strange
corruption, became Ante diem Idus Martias (as if ante governed
diem) or A.d. iii Id. Mart.

The 5th of March (7+1−5 = 3) = A.d. iii Non. Mart.

So: *I was present on August 3rd.* A.d. iii Non. Aug. adfui (Nones
of August = the 5th; 5+1−3 = 3).

He was born Sept. 23rd. Natus est a. d. ix. Kal. Oct. (32−23 = 9;
30 days in Sept. +1 in Oct. +1).

He died on the 3rd of June. A.d. iii Non. Iun. mortuus est (Nones
on 5th; 6 3 3).

I spoke in the Senate on October 21st. A.d. xii Kal. Nov. in Senatu
dixi (31+2−21 = 12).

Note.—The phrase Ante diem came to be regarded as an indeclin-
able noun, and was joined with a preposition: as,

He invited me to dinner for Nov. 16th. In a.d. xvi Kal. Dec. me in
cœnam invitavit.

From the 8th of September to the 31st of October. Ab a.d. vi Id.
Sept. in prid. Kal. Nov.

4. The day before any one of the above dates may be expressed
by pridie (with Acc.) and the day after by postridie: as,

Pridie Kalendas Quinctiles, *the 30th of June;* prid. Kal. Sextiles,
the 31st of July; prid. Non. Octobres, *the 6th of October;* postrid.
Idus Maias, *the 16th of May.*

§ 49. ROMAN MONEY.

1. The common coins in use in Rome during the last two centuries of the Republic were the As (over 1 cent), the *sesterce*, the *denarius*, and the *aureus*. The As was of copper, the sesterce and denarius of silver, and the aureus of gold.

2. The following table gives the relative value of these coins, true for approximately the last two centuries of the Republic.

TABLE OF ROMAN MONEY.

4 asses = 1 sestertius (5 cents).

4 sestertii = 1 denarius (20 cents).

25 denarii = 1 aureus ($4.50).

3. The Sesterce* was the common unit for expressing sums of money at Rome.

It was used as follows:—

a. Up to 2,000 the Numeral Adj. was used with Sestertius, as,

Centum sestertii, *a hundred sesterces;* undeni sestertii, *eleven sesterces each.*

(*b*) Above 2,000 and up to a million, the Neut. Plur. sestertia was used for the thousands: as,

Sestertia tria et quadringenti octoginta sestertii, *3,480 sesterces.*

Note.—Millia sestertium, is also used instead of Sestertia.

(*c*) To express Millions, the tens of the numeral adverb series (decies, vicies, etc.) are used with Centena millia sestertium, which, for the sake of convenience, is usually omitted: as,

Decies [centena millia] sestertiûm (for sestertiorum). *One million sesterces* (lit., *ten times one hundred thousand sesterces*).

Vicies [centena millia] sestertium. *Two million sesterces.*

Quadragies, etc. *Four million sesterces.*

Thus: Tu autem quadringenties sestertiûm, quod Idibus Martiis debuisti, quonam modo ante Kalendas Apriles debere desisti? *How did you cease to owe before the Kalends of April, the forty millions of sesterces you owed on the Ides of March?*

*Sestertius is derived from semis tertius and tertius, third, i.e., the third a half less, hence it is often written HS or sist. It was originally worth 2½ asses.

(d) When a sum requires more than one numeral adverb to express it, the numerals must be added together if the larger stands first, but multiplied if the smaller stands first: as,

Millies quingenties sestertiûm. *One hundred and fifty millions.*

Ter vicies sestertium. *Six million sesterces* (= 3 × 20 × 100,000).

(e) The Gen. Pl. sestertiûm, used in expressing large sums, is sometimes treated as a neuter noun and declined: as,

Syngrapha sestertii centiens facta est. *A bond of 10,000,000 sesterces was drawn up.*

In vicies sestertio splendide se gessit. *He kept up great state on a fortune of two millions.*

The following abbreviations were in use:

$$\overline{\text{HS lx}} \text{ sexaginta sestertii} = 60 \text{ sesterces.}$$
$$\underline{\overline{\text{HS lx}}} = \text{sexagena sestertia} = 60,000 \text{ sesterces.}$$
$$\underline{\overline{\text{HS lx}}} = \text{sexagies sestertium} = 6,000,000 \text{ sesterces.}$$

Note.—Nummus *a coin* is frequently used instead of Sestertius

§ 50. ROMAN WEIGHTS AND MEASURES. INTEREST.

1. The word As was used to express any unit, and it was divided into twelve parts (unciae) to express twelfths of the unit.

The names of these divisions are as follows:

DIVISIONS OF THE AS.

As, the unit.

Deunx, gen. -uncis (de-uncia = *one ounce off*) = $\frac{11}{12}$.

Dextans, -antis (de-sextans = *a sixth off*) = $\frac{10}{12}$.

Dodrans, -antis (de-quadrans = *a fourth off*) = $\frac{9}{12}$.

Bes, bessis = $\frac{8}{12}$.

Septunx, -uncis (septem-uncia) = $\frac{7}{12}$.

Semis or semissis, gen. semissis (semi-as, *a half as*) = $\frac{6}{12}$.

Quincunx, -uncis (quinque-uncia) = $\frac{5}{12}$.

Triens, -entis (*a third*) = $\frac{4}{12}$.

Quadrans, -antis (*a fourth*) = $\frac{3}{12}$.

Sextans, -antis (*a sixth*) = $\frac{2}{12}$.

Uncia = $\frac{1}{12}$.

Note 1.—Of the above divisions, Semis, triens, quadrans, and sextans were used as names of coins.

Note 2.—Both *inch* and *ounce* are derived from uncia.

2. These divisions were used for dividing into twelfths any unit like iugerum (*an acre*), pes, (*a foot*), libra (*a pound*): as,

Arare semissem iugeri. *To plough half an acre.*

Obeliscus centum viginti quinque pedum et dodrantis. *An obelisk 125½ feet high.*

Tres libras cum semisse. *Three pounds and a half.*

3. They were commonly used also in bequests: as,

Heres ex asse. *Heir to the whole estate.*

Heres ex semisse. *Heir to half the estate.*

Heres ex uncia. *Heir to one-twelfth.*

INTEREST.

4. The same divisions were used for reckoning interest usurae, fenus), which was due monthly. Thus:

Asses usurae (*units interest*, i.e., *one a month for the use of a hundred*), *twelve per cent. per annum.* It was also called Centesimae usurae (i.e., *the hundredth interest*), because in one hundred months a sum equal to the principal (*sors*) would have been paid.

The following table gives the Latin for Interest from 1 to 12%:

		% per annum.
Asses		12
Deunces		11 (*i.e.*, ¹¹⁄₁₂ per month)
Dextantes		10
Dodrantes		9
Besses		8
Septunces	usurae	7
Semisses		6
Quincunces		5
Trientes		4
Quadrantes		3
Sextantes		2
Unciae		1

So too: Binae centesimae, 24%, per annum; ternae centesimae, 36% per annum, etc. Thus:

Pecuniam assibus usuris collocavit. *He invested money at 12%.*

Dodrantibus usuris grandem pecuniam apud eum collocavit. *He placed a large sum of money in his hands at 9%.*

TABLE OF SYNTAX RULES.

(To be illustrated from the books read).

1. The Direct object is in the Acc., the Indir. in the Dat.

2. A Rel. agrees with its antecedent in Gen., Number, and Person; its case is determined by the verb of its own clause.

3. Verbs, of *making, choosing, calling*, &c. (factitives), take two Accusatives.

4. Verbs of *teaching* and verbs of *asking* (except peto, quaero, and usually postulo) take two Accs.

5. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the Acc.

6. The Acc. is used in *Exclamations:* as, O me miserum, *wretched that I am!*

7. The Acc. with Inf. is used as a noun, for an Eng. *that*-clause with *should;* as, Decōrum est domos patēre, *it is proper that our houses should stand open.*

8. The Gen. is used to express the whole of which a part is taken (*partitive Gen.*).

9. The Gen. is used with Sum to express *to belong to*, and to express *task, duty, mark*, &c.

10. The Gen. is used to express *quality*, and indefinite *price*.

11. The Gen. of source is used with certain verbs of *feeling* (*pudet*, &c.).

12. The Gen. is used with Rēfert and interest, *it is of importance to.*

13. The Gen. of the charge is used with verbs of *accusing, condemning*, &c.

14. The Gen. is used with admoneo (*remind*), memini, obliviscor, misereor, egeo.

15. Adjs. followed in English by *of* (except *worthy of*) take the Gen.

16. Adjs. followed in English by *to* or *for* take the *Dative.*

17. Many verbs take a Dative. See § 7, 6.

18. Verbs compounded with certain prepositions take the Dat.

19. Verbs compounded with male and satis, take the Dat.

20. The verb Sum used with the Dat. means *to belong to.*

21. Verbs meaning *to take away from* take the Dat. (Tibi vitam adimo.)

22. A Dat. *the dat. of purpose* is used with certain verbs to denote *purpose.*

23. The Dat. is often used idiomatically for the Gen. (Cui ad pedes se iecit.)

24. The Abl. is used with a or ab to express the Agent; but the Dat. is used with the *Pass. Periphr.*

25. The Abl. is used to express *cause, manner,* and *instrument.*

26. The Abl. *abl. of specification* is used to express that *in respect to such a thing* is or is done: as, Natura triquetra, *triangular in form.*

27. The Abl. is used to express *measure of difference, separation, time, price, quality,* and *attendant circumstance.*

28. Certain transitive verbs take the Abl. instead of the Acc. (*utor,* &c.).

29. Opus est takes Abl. of thing and Dat. of person.

30. Certain Adjs. are joined with the Abl.

31. A point of time and "time within which" are expressed by the Abl.

32. The comparative degree is often followed by the Abl.

33. The *case absolute* in Latin is the Abl.

34. *Place to which,* with the name of a town or small island, is expressed by the Acc.; with the name of a country, a preposition is used.

35. *Place from which,* with the name of a town or small island, is expressed by the Abl.; with the name of a country, a preposition is used.

36. *Place in which* (place *where*), with the name of a town or small island, takes the form of the Gen., if the noun is of the first or second Decl. Sing.; otherwise, of the Abl. With names of countries, a preposition is used.

37. To express *place where* with common nouns, a preposition is required, unless there is an Adj. with the noun: as, In urbe, *in the city;* but, Hac urbe, *in this city.*

38. Verbs of *saying, thinking,* &c., take the *Acc. with Inf.* for the English noun-clause with *that.*

39. Verbs of *hoping* take a Fut. Inf.

40. Translate, *They said he was at Rome* by Dixerunt eum Romae esse or by Dixerunt eum Romae fuisse, according as the *actual words* used were, Romae est or Romae fuit.

41. The Inf. is often used for the Impf. in narration (*historic Inf.*).

42. Many verbs (*modal verbs*) take an Inf. after them to complete their meaning. See § 1, 3.

43. The supine is used to express purpose after a verb of motion.

44. To express nouns in *-ing* use the *Gerundive*, if the verb governs the Acc.; if not, the *Gerund*.

45. Duty and necessity (*must* and *ought*) are expressed by the *passive periphrastic conjugation*.

46. *Intention* is often expressed by the *Active periphrastic conjugation*.

47. The *indirect question* (after *rogo*, &c.) has its verb in the Subjun.

48. Primary tenses are followed by primary, secondary by secondary (*Law of Sequence*). The law does not apply to *Consecutive clauses*.

49. *Qui final, qui causal, qui consecutive*, and *qui concessive*, take the Subjun.

50. Verbs of *fearing* take ne or ut with the Subjun.

51. Verbs of *preventing* (except prohibeo) take quominus with the Subjun.

52. *Purpose* is not expressed in Latin by the Inf.

53. The Fut. Ind. and Pres. Subjun. are used in Fut. conditions; the Impf. and Plpf. Subjun. in conditions contrary to fact.

54. Dependent clauses in Indir. narration (or after another Subjun.) take the Subjun.

55. A Plpf. Subjun. in Indirect Narration represents a Fut.-pf. in a dependent clause in Direct.

56. Imperatives of Direct narration become Subjun. in Indirect.

57. Rhetorical questions in indirect are put in the Inf.

58. Verbs of *asking, ordering* (except iubeo), and *advising* take an Inf. in English, but ut with Subj. in Latin.

59. The Perf. Part. Act. is supplied in four ways.

60. Of two verbs connected by *and*, one often becomes a participle.

61. The English Pres. Part. is often expressed by the Perf. Part. or its equivalent.

62. English abstract nouns are often expressed by (*a*) the Inf.; (*b*) the Indirect question; (*c*) the Pres. Part.; (*d*) the Perf. Part.

63. The Latin Part. may represent an English finite clause.

64. *Without* joined to a noun in -*ing*, cannot be translated by Sine with a Gerund.

65. The Fut. Subj. Act. is supplied by the Act. Periphrastic Conjugation, and the Fut. Subj. Pass. by Futurum sit ut.

66. The Fut. Inf. of verbs that have no Supine, is supplied by Fore ut.

67. *Postquam* is joined with the Pf. for the Eng. Plpf.

68. *Priusquam* is usually joined with the Subjun.

69. *Cum* causal and *cum* with past tenses have the Subjun.

70. *Dum*, *while*, takes the Ind.; dum, *until*, takes the Ind. of the past, the Subjun. of the Fut.; dum, *provided that*, takes the Subjun.

71. *Quin* with the Subjun. is used after verbs of negative notion (non dubito quin, *I do not doubt that*).

72. *Utinam*, *Oh, that*, takes the Pres. Subjun. of the Fut., the Impf. Subjun. of the Pres., and the Plpf. Subjun. of the past.

73. The Subjun. is used in simple sentences in *wishes*, *commands*, *exhortation*, *deliberative questions* and to soften an assertion.

74. A verb that governs the Dat. is not used personally in the Pass.

75. Intrans. verbs of motion prefer the Pass. (impers) to the Act.

76. An ut-clause is used to define a noun or pronoun.

77. A quod-clause often has the Subjun. (*virtual oblique*).

78. *Any* is *quis* after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, *num*, *quo*, and *quanto; quisquam* (*ullus*) after a negative or virtual negative; and *quivis*, when it means *any at all*.

PART III.

LATIN IDIOM IN THE USE OF WORDS.

PART III.

LATIN IDIOM IN THE USE OF WORDS.

SECTION 1.

THE ABSTRACT NOUN SUPPLIED BY THE INDIRECT QUESTION.

Latin, as compared with English, has few abstract nouns, the absence of which was supplied in many ways.

The abstract noun is frequently replaced, for example, by an Indirect Question: as,

Rogavit quot hostes essent. *He asked the* number *of the enemy.*

Scio cur redieris. *I know the* reason *of your return.*

Dicam tibi quo eamus. *I will tell you our* destination.

Quid de ea re sentiat exponet. *He will explain his* view *of the matter.*

Vides quale periculum sit. *You see the* nature *of the danger.*

EXERCISE 1.

(See Ex. 13 and 23 of Part II.)

1. I see the *suddenness* of the danger (use *quam, how*). 2. Can you tell the *source* of that rumor? 3. I have heard the *origin* of the custom. 4. You see the *character* of the man. 5. Let us ask him the *date* of his departure. 6. Shall we ever know the *manner* of his death? 7. I did not know the *size* of the city. 8. Let us wait that we may see the *issue* of the matter (use *evado, turn out*). 9. No one foresaw the *extent* of the danger. 10. They knew the *reason* for his action. 11. The *motive* of his act was plain to all. 12. Tell me his *opinion* (say *what he thinks*) of the whole affair. 13. You know now the *manner* of his life from boyhood. 14. Have they discovered the enemy's *position*? 15. How shall we ever know the time, place, manner and agents in this crime? 16. Have they not gone away to discover the size and character of the enemy's fleet? 17. Tell me the companions of your daily life and I will tell you your own character. 18. On what field (use *ubi*) he fell, is uncertain. 19. We shall never discover their intentions in that way. 20. There was no reason for my delay (use *nihil erat cur*). 21. He discharged some of the soldiers on the pretext that they had served their campaigns (use *hoc erat cur*).

SECTION 2.

THE LATIN VERB FOR AN ENGLISH NOUN.

1. Abstract and verbal nouns in Latin are frequently supplied by a verb: as,

Id rogo, *I make this request;* idem promitto, *I make the same promise;* nihil respondet, *he gives no answer;* hoc gloriatur, *he makes this boast.*

Eadem peccat, *he commits the same sins;* nihil succenset, *he feels no resentment.*

Brutus sensit contra se iri. *B. perceived that an attack was being made upon himself* (lit., *that it was gone*).

Maiora deliquerant quam quibus ignosci posset. *They had committed crimes too serious to be pardoned* (§31,2c).

Inde longissime prospectari poterat. *Thence a very distant prospect could be obtained.*

2. Verbs of *motion*, used impersonally in the Pass., are very often found where English uses a noun: as,

Pugnatum est, *a battle was fought;* clamatum est, *a shout was raised;* ad arma concurritur, *there is a rush to arms.*

Infelicissime pugnatum est. *A most disastrous battle has been fought.*

3. The five Impersonal verbs of emotion (§40, 1) are commonly used for the corresponding abstract nouns in English: as,

Huius rei eum paenituit. *This thing filled him with remorse.*

Me meae ignaviae piguit. *I felt vexation at my idleness.*

4. The Latin Inf. will often supply the place of an Abstract noun:

Humanum est errare. *Error is human.*

Liberius dicere mihi non licuit. *Greater freedom of speech was not allowed me.* So too: Beate vivere, *happiness* (also, beata vita); felicem esse, *good fortune* (lit., *to be lucky*).

5. The Pres. Part. Act., the Perf. Part. Pass., and the Gerund are very often found in Latin where English uses an abstract or verbal noun: as,

Mihi querenti, *to my complaint;* te repugnante, *in spite of your opposition;* indignantium voces, *expressions of indignation.*

Ab urbe condita. *From the foundation of the city.*

Propter classem amissam condemnatus est.   *He was condemned for the loss of the fleet.*

Post expulsum filium.   *After the expulsion of the son.*

Otiandi, non negotiandi causa Syracusis se continuit.   *He repaired to Syracuse for recreation not for business.*

6. A noun-clause introduced by Quod (*the fact that*) will often take the place of an English noun: as,

Mihi gratum est quod venisti.   *The fact of your coming is pleasing to me.*

Idcirco adfui quod ei subvenire volui.   *The reason of my presence was my wish to aid him.*

Quod ei subveni mihi iucundum est.   *The reflection that I aided him is delightful to me.*

7. An adverbial clause is frequently used for an English abstract noun: as,

Hoc malum ut vitaret, abiit.   *For the avoidance of this evil, he went away.*

Hoc accidit dum abfui.   *This occurred in my absence.*

8. The Gen. is used with the verb Sum, *I am*, to express words like *task, duty, custom, characteristic, mark, token:* as, Iudicis est sequi verum, *it is the duty of a judge to follow the truth* (lit., *to follow the truth is of,* i.e., *belongs to, a judge*); hoc est praeceptoris, *this is the business of an instructor;* sapientis est res adversas aequo animo ferre, *it is the characteristic of a wise man to bear adversity with resignation* (lit., *with an even mind*).

Hoc est evertendae rei publicae.   *The tendency of this is the subversion of the constitution* (lit., *this belongs to*).

Note.—With possessive pronouns, this Gen. is not used, but the neuter of the corresponding possessive Adj.: as, Tuum (not tui) est videre, *it is your duty to see.*

EXERCISE 2.

1. After the expulsion of the kings, consuls were elected. 2. He kept silence in your presence. 3. They contemned my threats. 4. I will go to Rome to have an interview with them (*convenio and acc.*). 5. Will he make a voyage in the middle of winter? 6. You should yield obedience to the laws. 7. There was a general rush to the walls of the city. 8. I believe that he feels regret for his conduct. 9. Every

evil seems harmless at its birth (*nascor*). 10. After a brief exhorta-
tion, he induced them to remain. 11. They feel neither shame nor
sorrow for their folly. 12. He never lost his belief in the existence
of God. 13. The resistance ceased after midnight. 14. On arriving
at the gate, they immediately demanded admittance. 15. Is it the
mark of a mean mind to love wealth? 16. There is a possibility that
his political opinions are the same as your own (use *de re p. sentire*).
17. The murder of Pompey was a dreadful (*gravis*) crime. 18. What
is your opinion of such people? 19. In accordance with orders,
they set out at once. 20. From his unwillingness to harm the coun-
try, he refused to obey. 21. On their arrival in the harbor, they were
accused of treachery. 22. Only training can secure you victory
et si and *et si si*

SECTION 3.

USE OF THE ADJECTIVE FOR AN ABSTRACT NOUN.
CONCRETE FOR ABSTRACT.

1. An Adjective in Latin will often replace an English noun: as,

Hortos venales habuit. *He had gardens for sale.*

So: Tumultus servilis, *a rising of the slaves;* iter maritimum, *a
journey by sea.* An honestus, *a man of honor.*

2. The neuter of an Adjective (singular and plural) is often thus
used for an English abstract noun: as,

Aliud est honestum, utile aliud. *Honor is one thing; expediency,
another.*

Vera et falsa disiungunt. *They divorce truth and falsehood.*

The Neut. Adj. or pronoun is used in Latin to express an English
noun for which the word *thing* might be used, but a more preten-
tious noun is preferred. Thus:

Haec sequebatur, *he pursued these objects;* magna ausus est, *he
ventured on great enterprises;* hoc unum me consolatur, *this one con-
sideration* (or *reflection*) *affords me consolation.*

Hoc audeo dicere. *I venture to make this assertion.*

Hoc mihi molestum est me non esse bonum civem. *This thought
is painful to me, that I am not a patriot.*

Si modo haec stabunt. *If only the present condition of the country
continues.*

Amissa erant per quie humus exciditur. *The tools for digging the earth had been lost.*

3. An English abstract noun may frequently be expressed by making it Concrete, *i.e.*, referring it to an individual: as,

Nullum poetam legerat, nullum oratorem noverat *He had read no poetry and was unacquainted with oratory.*

Plurimum interest inter doctum et rudem. *There is the greatest difference between a learning and ignorance (lit., between a learned man and an ignorant man).*

Ingeniosi non sunt quales esse nobis videntur. *Genius is different from what we suppose it to be.*

A plural noun is frequently so used: as,

Legibus parendum est. *We should yield obedience to law.*

Frumenta propter frigora matura non erant. *The corn was not ripe owing to the cold.*

Assiduos inter labores vitam degunt. *They spend their lives in incessant labor.*

4. In accordance with this love of the concrete is:

(*a*) The use of the name of the nation instead of the name of a city or country: as, Atheniensis, *a man of Athens;* clades Cannensis, *the defeat at Cannae,* foedus Albanum, *the treaty at Alba,* duo Arpinates, *the two men of Arpinum* (Marius and Cicero).

Romani cum Karthaginiensibus bellum iam diu gerunt. *Rome has long been making war upon Carthage.*

(*b*) The disregard of the use of titles: as,

Videsne tu, A. Corneli, cacumen illud? *Do you see that elevation, General?* (of a private soldier to his general).

Id nosmet ipsos facere oportet, Phaedria. *We must do it ourselves, sir* (of a slave to his master).

(*c*) The disregard of the use of impersonal forms of reference: as,

De hac re iam Servium, virum amplissimum, audistis. *With regard to this proposal, you have already heard an honorable member* (of a previous speaker in the Senate).

So: Legem tam utilem tolli, Quirites, non ferendum est. *The abrogation of so salutary a law, sir, is intolerable* (addressed to the members of the Assembly not, as with us, to the Speaker).

Patres conscripti, *my Lords* (of the Senate); Iudices, *Gentlemen of the Jury.*

12

(*d*) The more direct use of proper names obtained by transferring an epithet to an appositive: as,

Cato meus, vir doctissimus.   *My learned friend, Cato.*

So: Frater tuus, vir fortissimus.   *Your gallant brother.*

(*e*) What may be called the "allusive use" of proper names: as,

Tempora Numae minus apta.   *A period little suited to Numa* (*i.e.*, irreligious).

EXERCISE 3.

1. What object, do you think, is he pursuing?   2. Some men p .sue one object, some another.   3. He laid his plans before the court (say *king and queen*).   4. He said that procrastination (*cunctor*) would be fatal *timestus*.   5. He thought that flattery was wit *adj.*. 6. I have already explained what I consider the qualifications (*artes*) of a general (use *adj.*).   7. The secret of his unbroken success (say *on this account;* use *res succedit*) lay in his wisdom and foresight. 8. This is the advantage of vehemence and activity, that they soon learn to reform themselves.   9. Timidity, however, is more fatal. 10. A man once persuaded that an impediment is insuperable, has made it more difficult than before.   11. He will never discover the unreasonableness (use *vanus*) of his fears.   12. These tribes still enjoy their ancient freedom.   13. There was no longer any possibility of his escape.   14. All regard ingratitude with detestation (use *verb*).   15. The Roman loved oratory.   16. The betrayal of their plans threw them into confusion.   17. If I had made any proficiency (*proficio*) in the art myself, I should not use these words. 18. Over self-confidence (*inf.*) is a mark of arrogance.   19. It was a surprise (use *mirum*) to me that so wise a man as your father should have put confidence in their promises (say *had your father, a very wise man*).   20. He denied the possibility of their making war upon Rome.   21. His kindness and clemency were as remarkable as his courage.   22. Their judgment with regard to him is correct (use *iudico*).   23. By these wars he almost impoverished his treasury (use *pecunia*).

SECTION 4.

RES AND RES PUBLICA.

1. In its highest literary form, Latin approximates in simplicity and directness to the colloquial forms of modern speech.

This is well illustrated by the continual use in Latin of *Res* *thing* and *res publica* *people's concern* for English abstract nouns.

Thus in one page of Livy we find:

Omnibus conciliis eam rem agitari adferebatur. *Word was brought that this question was being debated at all their meetings.*

Quietae res ex Etruria nuntiabantur. *A peaceful condition of affairs in Etruria was announced.*

Tribunis iam diu nullam novandi res causam invenientibus (*abl. abs.: As the tribunes had for a long time found no motive for agitation* (rem novare, *make an innovation*).

Hibernacula etiam, res nova militi Romano, aedificari coepta sunt. *Winter huts—a new departure for the Roman soldiery—began to be built.*

Other examples are:

Ea res offendit animos populorum Etruriae. *This proceeding the election of a kings offended the peoples of Etruria* animos used in the Latin way to define the action of the verb more closely).

Ut res docuit. *As the fact showed.*

Multae res in philosophia non satis adhuc explicatae sunt *Many problems in philosophy have received as yet no adequate solution*

Bonis tuis rebus, meas malas res ludis. *In your prosperity, you are mocking my misfortune.*

Res secundae (or prosperae), *prosperity;* res adversae, *adversity;* res tranquillae, *tranquillity;* res accisae, *impaired fortunes;* res novae, *a revolution;* rem novare, *attempt a revolution;* res repetere, *demand satisfaction.*

2. The Gen. rerum is often added to nouns that are beginning to be used as abstracts: as, Causa rerum, *a cause;* cognitio rerum, *study;* repugnantia rerum, *contradiction.*

Hoc est praecipue salubre in cognitione rerum. *There is this useful feature about study.*

Use of Res Publica.

3. The use, too, of the word Res publica *the people's concern* is equally suggestive. It is written in two words and each word given its full force and translated to suit the context. Thus:

Sin autem vos plus tum in re p. vidistis. *But if you, on that occasion, showed more political insight* (lit., *saw more in regard to the people's interest*).

Sullam in Italiam res p. revocavit. *The political situation recalled Sulla to Italy.*

Cunctam rem p. res tuae gestae amplexae sunt. *Your reforms have covered the whole field of political activity.*

Quid magnum aut amplum eum de re publica cogitare [putare possumus] qui pecuniam ex aerario depromptam. . . . Romae in quaestu reliquerit? *What lofty or generous sentiment with regard to public duty can we suppose one to entertain who has left behind him funds withdrawn from the public treasury, at interest (in his private account) at Rome?*

Res publica may mean, according to the context, '*the country,*' the nation, the constitution, politics, etc. Thus:

Hoc evertendae rei p. esse dixit. *He said that this tended to the subversion of the constitution.*

Contra rem p. *Against the interests of the country* (opposed to *e re p.*).

Rem p. bene (male) gerere. *To administer public affairs successfully (unsuccessfully).*

EXERCISE 4.

1. I hope that you will manage this affair in a way that (*ut*) will be worthy of your distinguished father. 2. This affront the Romans resented bitterly (*aegre pati*). 3. So sudden was the attack that they at once withdrew. 4. That year the administration of affairs was a failure in politics and in war (use *domi militiaeque*). 5. This incident however did not decrease their courage. 6. Have they told you how serious (*gravis*) the danger to (*gen.*) their interests is? 7. Will you not devote yourself (*incumbo*) to the national cause? 8. Would you rather (use *malo*) consider (*specto*) the men (*auctor*) or the measures. 9. I believe that the project will be postponed. 10. He has, I believe, always deserved well of (*de*) his country. 11. The form of the constitution has often been changed. 12. This proceeding proved their salvation. 13. From these pursuits arises facility in speaking. 14. I have determined to relate the history of Rome from the foundation of the city. 15. Distrustful of their safety, they left the city. 16. You were wrong, not in your facts but in your dates (*tempus*). 17. Are you in any respect to be compared to him? 18. Shall Rome have the government of Alba or Alba of Rome? 19. The cry of misery ascends to heaven (say *the gods*). 20. On these terms an agreement was made (use *pango*).

SECTION 5.

PERSONIFICATION AVOIDED. ABSTRACT NOUN FOR AN ADJ.—HENDIADYS.

1. Latin avoids Personification and therefore an abstract noun used as the subject of a transitive verb is not usual: as,

Virtute militum victoriā parta est. *The bravery of the soldiers won the victory.*

Metu subactus rem Romulo aperit. *Fear made him disclose the facts to Romulus.*

Patre mortuo filius princeps civitatis factus est. *The death of the father left the son head of the state.*

2. So too, the name of a mere *instrument*, as opposed to an *agent*, is not often the subject of a transitive verb: as,

Hac mercede adductus est ut portam aperiret. *This bribe induced him to open the gate.*

The poetical style of Livy, however, tends to disregard this principle: as,

Tristem hiemem gravis aestas excepit. *A sickly summer followed a gloomy winter.*

N.B.—This is true especially of mental effects: as, Pavor tribunos invaserat. *Fear had seized the tribunes.*

3. An abstract noun must of course be used in speaking of a quality itself or in ascribing a quality to an individual: as,

Virtus in recte agendo posita est. *Virtue consists in right action.*

In his artibus praestabant illi: probitate, industria, temperantia. *In these qualities they were pre-eminent: uprightness, energy, and self-control.*

4. For an emphatic attribute, too, Latin often uses an abstract noun: as,

In armis, militum virtus et locorum opportunitas multum iuvant. *Valiant troops and strong defensive positions are important factors in military success* (lit., *goodness of positions*).

Cum antea nondum huius auctoritatem loci attingere auderem. *Since I did not as yet dare to set foot upon this time-honoured spot.*

By this idiom special emphasis was laid on the quality. It is common in describing scenery: as,

Maris profunditas, *the deep sea;* camporum immensitates, *the boundless prairies.*

This is a common feature of Latin style and in striking contrast to the usual Latin tendency to avoid abstract nouns.

5. Latin does not join an adjective or adjectival phrase to an abstract noun, but prefers to use two nouns connected by *et* instead: as,

Omnia vi et armis sublata sunt. *Everything has been taken away by force of arms.*

Res iuventute geruntur et viribus. *Business is transacted by youthful strength.*

This is called *hendiadys.* It is a common characteristic of Cicero's style: as,

Nihil est enim opere et manu factum quod non aliquando conficiat vetustas. *There is nothing made by the work of man's hands that time does not at last destroy.*

Insula Delos quo omnes undique cum mercibus atque oneribus commeabant. *The Island of Delos, to which all men resorted from every country with cargoes of merchandise.*

Publicani suas rationes et copias in illam provinciam contulerunt. *The Publicani have carried their money speculations to that Province* (lit., *their plans and their wealth*).

Other examples are:

Clamores et admirationes, *stormy applause;* clamor et admurmuratio, *loud murmuring;* non sine vociferatione et indignatione, *not without loudly expressed indignation;* ratio et consilium, *rational judgment;* temeritas et casus, *blind chance;* metus et anxietas, *an anxious fear.*

Permissa est vulgo ultio et satietas. *The glutting of its revenge was allowed the mob.*

EXERCISE 5.

1. News of the rout of the army was received with cries of sorrow (*part.*). 2. Under these circumstances, the Senate permitted his return. 3. The result is (*efficio*) that man, if he obeys (*part.*) Nature, cannot injure man. 4. Natural shame (*hend.*) might have prevented him from being present. 5. They will always have a lively recollection (say *memory and recollection*) of all his services to the country. 6. They have neglected the systematic study (*hend.*) of

literature. 7. All other philosophical systems he despised. 8. All these things were made by human handiwork. 9. They always differed in party policy. 10. An abundant variety of food has been secured (*invenio*). 11. These terrible threats (say *terrors and threats*) of prosecution you should never have taken into account. 12. I had a thorough knowledge of his political views. 13. Fear and anxiety are inconsistent with such a disposition (say *such a man cannot be*). 14. The introduction of the games did not relieve the State from superstition or disease. 15. Towards them, as Christians (use *cum, since*) great cruelty was shown (use *saevio*). 16. Shouts of congratulations were heard in every part. 17. In a charge of this nature, inquiry should be made as to date, place, means, and agents. 18. The historians tell us that human society was a late development (use *sero*). 19. The impossibility of his performing this promise prevented his return. 20. The superiority of the enemy disheartened our allies. 21. His rashness ruined everything. 22. The darkness disordered their ranks.

SECTION 6.

THE USE OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS IN LATIN.

1. One of the most striking features of Latin idiom is seen in the use of the Adjective. The common adjectives of quality in Latin, are the simple generic adjectives like *magnus, parvus, amplus, tantus, ingens, summus,* etc. The constant use of descriptive epithets with nouns, and especially abstract nouns, is contrary to the genius of Latin diction: as,

Cepit magnum suae virtutis fructum. *He reaped the rich reward of his distinguished merit.*

Quod maius testimonium quaerimus? *What more convincing testimony do we require?*

Auctoritatem eius magnis vestris iudiciis amplificatam. . . . *His prestige enhanced by the highly appreciated judgments you have passed upon him. . . .*

Tanta vis probitatis est ut eam vel in hoste diligamus. *So attractive is the power of integrity that we love it even in an enemy.*

2. The meaning and color of the adjective, in the above examples, are mainly drawn from the context. Frequently the descriptive epithet is omitted altogether: as,

Vultum atque aciem oculorum ferre nequibant. *They could not face their fierce looks and savage glances.*

3. An Adj. properly applicable to a person, is not joined in Latin to the name of a thing: as, Multa sapienter dixit. *He said many wise things* (not sapientia).

4. Two adjectives qualifying one noun in Latin are connected by *et*, &c.,

Magnos et nitidos oculos habebat. *He had large bright eyes.*

5. An English prepositional phrase used as an Adj. must be joined to its own noun by a participle or a relative clause: as,

Vox e templo missa (or quae e templo mittebatur) eos revocavit. *A voice from the temple recalled them.*

Note.—Vox e templo eos revocavit would mean *A voice recalled them from the temple.*

Such an adjectival phrase may, however, be joined adverbially to the verb: as,

Levis eius animus in magnis rebus spectabatur. *His frivolity in great matters was noticed.*

6. An English adjective often expresses a reason or makes some distinct predication which is brought out explicitly in Latin by a separate clause: as,

Navis, cum fracta esset, cursum tenere non potuit. *The shattered vessel could not hold her course.*

Haec res imperatorem nostrum, qui belli esset peritissimus, non fefellit. *This manœuvre did not escape our veteran leader.*

So, where the emphatic verb in English is put in a relative clause, Latin demands that it should be made the main verb: as,

A fresh blow came that crushed the city. Clades nova urbem afflixit.
The sentence in English often begins with *It is, it was,* etc.: as,
It is you that I want. Te volo.

THE ADVERB.

7. The use of the adverb in Latin is in accordance with the use of the adjective. Adverbs, except those expressing place and time, are few. They are supplied by:

(*a*) An adjective: as,

Hoc libens feci. *I did it gladly.*

Invitus haec dico. *I say it reluctantly*

Imprudens erravi. *I have erred inadvertently.*

Eos vivus restituit. *He restored them during his life-time.*

So too: Iratus, *in anger;* metu perterritus, *in fear.*

Adversos, aversos aggredi. *To attack in front, in rear.*

(*b*) A noun: as,

Hoc consul fecit. *This he did in his consulship (as consul).*

So: Puer, *in his boyhood;* adulescens, *in his youth;* senex, *in his old age.*

Ratione et via docete. *Teach by method and system* (=*by a systematic method*).

Hoc memoria et litteris proditum est. *This has been handed down orally and in writing.*

So too: Arte factus, *artistically made;* vitio creatus, *irregularly elected;* natura tardior, *naturally rather slow.*

Amicitiam nec usu nec ratione cognitam habent. *They have known friendship neither practically nor theoretically.*

Ea, quae ex me audistis, re probare possitis. *May you be able to verify experimentally the principles you have heard from me!*

Plura verbo quam scriptura mandata dedimus. *We have given more commissions verbally than in writing.*

(*c*) A comparative adverbial clause: as,

Feci perinde ac debui. *I have acted honorably (in accordance with my duty).*

Poenas persolvit perinde ac meritus est. *He was punished rightfully (in accordance with his deserts).*

(*d*) A change of construction: as,

Abiisse videtur. *He is gone apparently.*

Dubitari non potest quin mortuus sit. *Undoubtedly he is dead.*

Peropportune accidit ut dives sit. *Very fortunately he is rich.*

Hoc cotidie facere soleo. *I usually do it every day.*

Manifestum est te errare. *You are manifestly wrong.*

(*e*) A verb: as,

Te oro obsecroque. *I solemnly entreat you.*

Clamo et testor hoc falsum esse. *I loudly protest that it is false.*

Egi atque perfeci ut, quid vellem, facerem. *I managed successfully to effect my object.*

This last principle is of wide application and largely accounts for
the doubling of synonyms so common in Cicero: as,

Vident et sentiunt, *they clearly see;* tueri et conservare, *to protect
in safety;* expeto et postulo, *I urgently request;* velle et optare, *to
fervently pray.*

Karthaginienses, homines in maritimis rebus exercitatissimos
paratissimosque, vicerunt.   *They won victories over Carthage, a
nation trained to the highest pitch of efficiency in naval warfare* (lit.,
most highly trained and most highly prepared).

Haec fides atque haec ratio pecuniarum, quae in Foro versatur,
implicata est cum illis pecuniis Asiaticis et cohaeret.   *The system
of credit based on coined in the Forum here, is indissolubly bound up
with the payments that are made in Asia.*

EXERCISE 6.

1. He considered him the ablest general of whom he had ever
read.   2. The opinion (*existimatio*) of the nation with regard to him
was most flattering.   3. He reports that they are men of giant
stature.   4. Can we believe that he entertains any noble or generous
sentiment?   5. They say that he was a man of commanding ability.
6. Such an influential man would have been elected at once.   7. I
defended the country in my youth; I shall not desert it in my old
age.   8. Such confident expectation of the successful administration
of public affairs (*rem p. gero*) was placed in him, that they made him
consul.   9. We see that the attacks (*impetus*) of the enemy have been
materially checked (use *retardo* and *reprimo*).   10. I was the last to
perceive what he was aiming at.   11. The war by his arrival was
reduced to comparative insignificance (use *attenuo* and *imminuo*).
12. In their youth they ventured on many a glorious enterprise.
13. In the pursuit of noble ends, they will endure every hardship.
14. Indicate a motive for this detestable crime.   15. He saw that
there was no possibility of retreating.   16. Their detestation of the
monarch himself was even more inveterate than their detestation
of the monarchical principle (*regnum*).   17. So deep was Roman
resentment that annihilation was evidently in store for the van-
quished nation (use *pereo*).   18. After the surrender of the town,
the magistrates were put to death.   19. By such a course of action
(use *si*) you will injure only yourself.   20. He changed his dress,
to escape recognition (use *ne*).

SECTION 7.

REL. CLAUSE AS AGENT. PICTURESQUE USE OF SUM. USE OF 2ND PERS. SING. OF VERB—ASYNDETON. TECHNICAL TERMS.

1. A Rel. clause is used for an English noun in -*er* or -*or*, expressing an *agent*: as,

Qui patrem meum interfecerunt. *My father's murderers*

Qui videbant ea, flebant. *The spectators wept.*

Note.—Nouns in -*tor* or -*sor* (expressing an agent), are common in Latin; but the Rel. clause is usual.

2. The verb *Sum* will take the place of a more emphatic or picturesque verb in English: as,

Per castra indignatio ingens erat. *Intense indignation reigned in the camp.*

Ex hoc est falsa opinio. *From this a false opinion results.*

3. Latin, in its love of the concrete, defines an act much more closely than English: as,

Corpora cibo curant. *They refresh themselves with food.*

Haec animos pavore levabant. *These proceedings relieved them from their fear.*

4. From this Latin love of the direct and concrete arises the constant use of the 2nd Pers. Sing. and of the 1st and 3rd Pers. Pl., for the English Passive or for the indefinite subject *one*, *people*, *etc.*: as,

Hoc verum esse, si velis temporum memoriam replicare, reperies. *The truth of this will be found, if the pages of history are turned over.*

Nascimur ingeniosi, fimus eruditi. *We are born with genius, but are made learned.*

5. Several consecutive nouns in Latin in the same construction are written down one after the other without conjunctions: as,

Illa arma centuriones cohortes non nobis periculum denuntiant. *Those arms, officers, and battalions do not threaten us with danger* This is called *asyndeton.*

So too, clauses: as, Redit iuvenis, rem narrat, implorat opem. *The youth returns, tells his story, and begs for aid.*

Modern Terms.

5. Modern political or philosophical ideas can rarely be expressed in Latin by single words. Thus:

Qui leges ponit, *lawgiver.*
Studium rei publicae, *patriotism.*
Rei p. regendae et constituendae peritia, *statesmanship.*
Ad rem p. accedere, *enter political life.*
Rem p. gubernare, *administer government.*
Cf. O navis referent in mare te novi Fluctus.
Qui in re publica versatur, *politician.*
Qui rei publicae statum conservat, *conservative.*
Nobiles, *aristocracy.*
Populi turbator, *demagogue.*
Quod cuique tributum est, *assessment.*
Exculta hominum vita, *civilisation.*
Aequatio bonorum, *communism.*
Res quae exportantur, *exports.*
Unius dominatus, *tyranny.*
Civitas ubi res publica penes unum est, *monarchy.*
Cf. Res p. penes paucos, penes populum, penes omnes.
Sacra sua aliis inculcare, *fanaticism.*
De deorum natura sententiae, *theology.*
Qui deos esse negat, *atheist.*
Divinus quidam afflatus, *inspiration.*
Dissentire a ceteris civibus de deorum cultu, *heterodoxy.*
Falsae atque inveteratae opiniones, *prejudices.*
Quae de moribus et officiis praecepta sunt, *moral philosophy.*
Rhetorum praecepta, *rhetoric.*
Rerum scriptor, *historian.*
Oratio soluta, *prose* (cf. oratio vincta).
Ilia commenticia Platonis res p., *Utopia.*

Exercise 7.

1. War, disease, and famine threatened them simultaneously. 2. In those days a better fashion was in vogue. 3. Both besiegers and besieged were seized with a sudden panic. 4. Confusion (*trepidatio*) prevailed on every side. 5. There was no way of distinguishing friends and strangers (use *2nd pers.*). 6. He was able to endure

coid, thirst, and hunger? 7. Are our own statesmen less able (*sollers*) than those who lived in former times? 8. He announced that the measure was both practicable and expedient (use *verbo*). 9. He was abler (*peritus*) than any of his predecessors upon the throne. 10. Do not tell me that he was angry with the bystanders. 11. He was much embarrassed (*confusus*) when he began to speak. 12. Open flattery (*palam*) all men hate. 13. The disappointed soldiers began to murmur (*fremo*). 14. Firmness and dignity are consistent with true courage. 15. He has lost all the vigor of youth? 16. You are all familiar with his political career. 17. He preferred a government which was monarchical rather than democratic. 18. By appeals to prejudice (use *invidia*) and acrimonious attacks (*invehor in*) upon his private character, they easily prevented his reäppointment. 19. He went off without accomplishing his object. 20. We met a company (use *nonnulli*) of soldiers who were conducting him to the place of execution (say *where he was to die*).

SECTION 8.

METAPHOR AVOIDED. WORDS WITH TWO OR MORE MEANINGS. ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM LATIN. PROPER NAMES.

1. In no respect does English idiom differ more from that of Latin than in the use of Metaphor. In Latin the use of metaphor is rare; in English, it is so common that it is used unconsciously. Thus:

Regnum a maioribus traditum excepit. *He ascended the throne of his fathers.*

Sui similis brevi fuit. *He soon showed himself in his true colors.*

Rei publicae impendēre multa pericula videntur. *The political horizon seems overcast with clouds.*

In translating English into Latin, metaphor should, as a usual thing, be dropped.

2. A metaphor may however be sometimes turned into Latin by expanding it into a simile. Thus, in the last example: Ut nubes mari saepe, ita rei publicae pericula nunc impendent.

3. The words quasi (*as if*), tamquam, velut, quidam, ut ita dicam, &c., are used to apologise for, or introduce, a figurative or unusual word: as,

E corpore, quasi e carcere, evolat animus. *The soul flies forth from the prison-house of the body.*

Philosophia omnium artium quasi parens erat. *Philosophy was the mother of all arts.*

4. Roman metaphor is chiefly drawn from war, agriculture, navigation, the stage, the human body, building, fire, light. Thus:

Rem publicam gubernat. *He holds the helm of state* (i.e., administers the government).

Partes (or personam) lenitatis agite. *Take the rôle of leniency.*

In tanto rei publicae incendio (res) sisti non potest. *In the midst of such public confusion, it cannot be helped* (lit., the thing cannot be set upright).

In spite of English fondness for metaphor, many Roman metaphors do not seem in accordance with the genius of the English language: as,

In medullis populi Romani et visceribus haerent. *They are enshrined in the affections of Rome* (lit., marrow and flesh).

5. Many English words are equivocal (*i.e.*, have two or more meanings), and, in translating into Latin, these meanings must be distinguished, if necessary even with the aid of the English dictionary. Thus:

Vir est summa fide. *He is a man of honor.*

Ille est patriae decŏri (*i.e.*, ornament). *He is an honor to his country.*

Dignus est summis populi Romani honoribus. *He is worthy of the highest honors in the gift of the people* (i.e., office, political distinction).

Laudem ei tribuunt. *They pay him honor.*

Sitit famæm (gloriam or laudem). *He thirsts for honor.*

So, too: Pro patria mori. *To die for one's country.*

Rus homines eunt (i.e., as opposed to the city). *People go into the country.*

De rei publicae salute perturbatur. *He is disturbed for the safety of his country* (i.e., the political community).

Cum summo civium gaudio rediit. *He returned, to the great joy of his country* (i.e., countrymen).

In eorum fines iter faciam. *I will march into their country.*

6. English words of Latin origin differ usually in meaning from the Latin original.

Thus: Summum honorem *or* magistratum consecutus est. *He obtained the highest office* (obtineo = *hold*; officium = *duty*).

Sulla dictator pauperes vexabat. *Sulla, as dictator, oppressed the poor* (opprimo = *crush*, or *surprise*).

Other examples are:

Acquire (adipiscor, consequor), *act* (facio), *alien* (externus), *attain to* (pervenio ad), *barbarous* (crudelis), *cease* (desino *or* desisto), *class* (genus), *commonly* (saepe), *crime* (scelus), *crown* (i.e., *kingdom*, regnum), *desire* (cupio), *expose to* (obicio), *famous* (praeclarus), *fatal* (perniciosus), *fathers* (maiores), *fury* (ira), *heart* (animus, indoles), *heaven* (deus, di immortales), *injury* (damnum), *mortal* (of a wound, mortiferum), *nation* (civitas, res publica), *be obnoxious* (odio esse), *provoke* (animum irrito), *ruin* (pernicies, interitus), *secure* (locus *or* ubi) *secure* (tutus), *triumph* (vinco), *urge* (agere cum . . . ut), *vile* (turpis), *world* (omnes *or* homines *or* universi, mundus), *study* (cognitio).

7. English Proper Names are translated by:

(*a*) Transliterating as closely to the original as euphony admits; as, Edward, *Edvardus;* Bradshaw, *Bradshavius.*

(*b*) Substituting a Latin name; as, Louis XIV., *Augustus.* Wellington, *Scipio;* Burke, *Cicero.*

(*c*) Using a paraphrase; as, *He was defeated at Waterloo.* In campis Belgicis victus est.

EXERCISE 8.

Translate, without metaphor:

1. I lent him the support of my influence (*auctoritas*) in the House (use *adiuvo*). 2. He was overwhelmed by the tide of business. 3. Does not the moon revolve round the world? 4. Was not the world made by design? 5. If he had consulted the interests of the country, he would have been dear to the country. 6. Rome was mistress of the whole world. 7. I am afraid I shall never see him again in this world. 8. All this district he won with the sword. 9. The love of money is the root of all evil. 10. He has held the sceptre for more than thirty years. 11. The voice of warning was drowned in shouts of admiration. 12. He drew a broad line between honor and self-interest. 13. That older world (*antiquitas*) stood

nearer to the dawn and saw truth with clearer eyes.   14. The enemy
was reduced to submission without difficulty.   15. Their exaspera-
tion will be proportionate to the good nature with which they now
proceed.   16. Disaster now stared them in the face (*impendeo*).
17. This reverse damped their triumph.   18. The Forum would have
been the stage for his genius.   19. The House assigned me this *rôle*,
and I sustained the character to the best of my ability.   20. Defeat
after defeat was inflicted upon the enemy by our generals, but there
always remained the embers (say *somethings*) from which the flame
of rebellion could be rekindled.   21. Bradshaw summoned Parlia-
ment (*senatus*) and spoke at great length (say: *in many words*) on
the Bill.   22. What (*ecquis*) Irishman would not have been glad
(*laetor*) to have been a contemporary (*aequalis*) of Grattan?   23. He
promised faithfully *that also*, but his promise proved a broken reed
(use *decipio*).

<h2 align="center">SECTION 9.</h2>

<h2 align="center">ORDER, EMPHASIS, AND RHYTHM.</h2>

<h3 align="center">ORDER.</h3>

1. Conjunctions, relative and interrogative pronouns, relative and
interrogative adverbs, usually stand first in their own clauses: as,

Quae cum ita sint, abeat.   *Under these circumstances, let him
depart.*

2. The following words never begin a sentence: Quis *tanquam*, quisque
each, quoque *also*, quidem *at least*, *indeed*, vero or autem *if also*,
enim (*for*), igitur (*therefore*).

3. The usual order of words in a Latin sentence is as follows:
(1) Subject; (2) adverbs of time, place and manner; (3) indirect
object; (4) direct object; (5) verb: as,

Caesar enim illo die ei coronam dedit.   *For that day Caesar gave
him a crown.*

<h3 align="center">EMPHASIS.</h3>

4. The practice of indicating emphasis by position, modifies the
regular arrangement and lends character and variety to the style: as,

Non video in mea vita quid despicere possit Antonius.   *I do not see
in my career what any vain can despise of the name of Antony* (subject
made emphatic by being put last instead of first).

So, too, the verb is emphasised by being put not last, but first: as,

Irridet Clodius Senatum. *Clodius is actually mocking the Senate.*

Pecunia a patre exacta est crudeliter. *The money was extorted from his father with every circumstance of cruelty* (adverb at the end for emphasis).

In miseriam nascimur sempiternam. *We are born to misery everlasting* (adjective last, for emphasis).

Profluens quiddam habuit Carbo et canorum. *Carbo had the gift not only of a flowing but of a musical style* (adj. last and separated from the word with which it would naturally go).

Note.—The use of the emphatic position renders many words, that are common in English, unnecessary in Latin. Thus:

Illius rei non mentionem faciam. *I should not mention that affair at all.*

Hoc non prius credam quam audiero legatos. *That I shall not believe till I actually hear the envoys.*

SPECIAL RULES OF ORDER.

5. The following are special rules of order:

(a) Everything logically connected with the Subject should be placed close to it: as,

Duo Numidae cum litteris ad Hannibalem missi sunt. *Two Numidians were sent to Hannibal with a letter* (there the letter belongs to the Numidians).

Democritus, luminibus amissis, alba et atra discernere non poterat. *Democritus could not distinguish black from white, after he had lost his sight.*

(b) A sentence should not, as a usual thing, have more verbs at the end than two: as,

Verres Siciliam ita vexavit ut in antiquum statum nullo modo restitui potuerit. *Verres so harried Sicily that it could not possibly be restored to its former condition* (the main verb of a final or consecutive sentence is not put at the end).

Dixit se intellegere id agi ut aliquid falsi dicere cogeretur (the verb introducing indirect narration put, as usual, first). *He said he saw that this was the aim, i.e., that the man might be compelled to say something false.*

13 —

Ferunt eum incredibili memoria fuisse. *They say that he had an incredible memory.*

(c) The verb of an explanatory clause introduced by *enim* or *autem*, stands first: as,

Quae res unquam gesta est tanta? Licet enim mihi apud te gloriari. *What such brilliant achievement has ever been performed? For I may boast before you.*

(d) A colorless verb (like esse, solere, posse, coepisse, &c.) stands usually in the middle of a sentence: as,

Hi solent esse utiles. *These people are usually of service.*

Sum, however, comes first in the sentence (1) when it means *to exist*, (2) to prevent the separation of closely connected words: as,

Est igitur haec lex. *This law, therefore, exists.*

Erat nemo quicum essem libentius. *There was none with whom I would more gladly be.*

(e) Words of opposite meaning, words of the same sound or derivation, and different cases of the same word, are usually written together for the sake of the contrast and the assonance: as,

Omnia unus Romae facere poterat. *In his single hand he controlled everything at Rome.*

Mortali immortalitatem non arbitror contemnendam. *I do not think immortality should be despised by a mortal.*

Nihil aliud quaerere debetis nisi uter utri insidias fecerit. *You should not ask any question but which of the two waylaid the other.*

(f) Two words in antithesis are often found, one at the beginning, the other at the end: as,

Errare malo cum Platone, quam cum istis vera sentire. *I prefer rather to be wrong with Plato than to be right with those gentry.*

(g) When pairs of words are contrasted, the order of the words in the second pair is reversed: as,

Audires ululatus feminarum, virorum clamores. *You would have heard the shrieking of women and the shouting of men.*

Note.— This arrangement is called chiasmus, from the Greek letter *chi*, X. Thus—

ululatus feminarum.

X

virorum clamores.

(d) Adjectives and attributive genitives (except those of posses-
sion, number, and amount) usually follow their nouns: as,

Civis Romanus sum. *I am a Roman citizen.*

Princeps Senatus. *The leader of the Senate.*

Two nouns belonging to a genitive are not separated, unless for
emphasis: as,

Huius orationis difficilius est exitum quam principium invenire.
It is more difficult to find the beginning of this speech than the end.

(i) The negative should come as near the head of the sentence
as possible: as,

Neque ipsi Lacedaemonii poterant. *Even the Lacedaemonians were
unable.*

Non erit melius vocem misisse. *You will find it better not to have
uttered a sound* (inf., when used as a noun, usually at the end).

RHYTHM.

6. The Latin writers paid particular attention to Rhythm (or the
due alternation of short and long syllables). The favorite ending
was the Cretic. Thus:

Ad miseriam nascimur sempiternam. *We are born to misery that
is unending.*

Patris dictum sapiens filii temeritas probavit. *The wise remark
of the father was verified by the rashness of the son.*

A sentence should not close with the ending of a hexameter verse
(e.g., ēssē vidētur).

The memorisation of a sentence or two from Livy or Cicero will
produce a sense of the common combinations.

EXERCISE 9.

1. When he was living there with great dignity owing to his many
virtues, the Spartans sent ambassadors to him at Athens. 2. They
deny that any one should live who acknowledges himself guilty of
homicide. 3. He felt that he was being taken to task (*reprehendo*)
even by Brutus. 4. With what feelings do you think a man like
Alexander lived? 5. Till to-day you have followed another general;
now follow Caesar. 6. On this charge he was condemned, a charge
of the most frivolous character. 7. Do not sacrifice (*posthabeo*) the
safety of your country to the safety of your father. 8. I was unable
to visit him; he lives in a remote part of the city. 9. Prosperity can-

not be secured without zealous effort.   10. He was a man undoubt-
edly worthy of all honor.   11. To think that men should eat human
flesh!   12. It is glorious to die for one's country.   13. He used to say
that silver was cheaper than gold, gold than virtues.   14. Danger
comes to one from one quarter, to another from another.   15. My
thoughts are at present employed in guessing the reason of your
absence (use *cogito*).   16. I am distressed at not receiving any in-
formation from you by letter.   17. I am now coming to the point at
issue (use *ago*).   18. They were bound to him by friendship of long
standing (use *vetustas*).   19. A man of wonderful eloquence and
profound learning, he did not escape condemnation.   20. The Nor-
mans, after this success (use *rem gerere*), made Louis prisoner (*capio*).

SECTION 10.
THE LATIN PERIOD.   CONNECTION.

1. The Latin writers were fond of putting forward in the sentence
the subject or some prominent word, and grouping into one organic
and harmonious whole (called a *period*) all connected ideas.

Modern English style has taken a different direction.   Every
sentence contains, as a usual thing, a single statement with which the
subordinate clauses (always very few and simple) are intimately
connected.

The scattered fragments of an English paragraph must often
be arranged into a Latin period.   Thus:

The Romans treated Mithridates with unexampled injustice.
They took from him Phrygia, because their attention had been
directed to the importance of that state.   This he never forgot.

Mithridates autem, summā a Romanis iniuriā affectus, se
spoliatum esse Phrygiā (eam enim civitatem sibi utilem fore
putabant) semper memoriā tenebat.

CONNECTION.

2. Latin usually shows the logical connection of each sentence
with the preceding; and, in turning English into Latin, this con-
nection must usually be expressed.   Thus:

*Horatius was marching in advance.   His sister met him before the
gate.*   Princeps Horatius ibat, cui soror obvia ante portam fuit (cui =
et ei, *and him*).

It was too late for him to regain public esteem. He had overlooked the threatening danger. Nec iam (by this) potuit studium populi recuperare. Non enim intellexerat (pick up) quae pericula sibi impendērent (enim, to connect).

Your whole charge is that I do not entertain a bad opinion of you. Omne autem tuum crimen est, quod de te non male existimem (autem, *to continue the narrative; adversative*).

3. The most common of all Latin connectives is the Relative pronoun. Thus:

Twice two is four. If this is granted, &c. Bis bina quattuor; quod si concessum erit, &c.

Note 1.- The relative is often used for *and* with a demonstrative; hence the frequent use in Latin of quamobrem, quare, quam ob causam (*and on account of this thing, etc.*).

Note 2. -When the antecedent is emphatic, the relative pronoun is put forward in the sentence: as,

Most people are servile to a man from whom they expect something. Plerique a quo aliquid sperant, ei (*or* eidem) inserviunt.

4. The subject of the main verb is often to be supplied in Latin from the relative clause: as,

When this word was brought him, he arose. Cui cum id esset nuntiatum, surrexit.

So, too: *There are books with which, when we have read them, we are delighted.* Libri sunt, quos cum legimus, delectamur.

5. For the sake of clearness and emphasis, a word is often repeated at the head of each clause of a sentence: as,

The panic and confusion were as great as if an enemy were besieging the city. Tantus pavor, tanta trepidatio fuit, quanta si hostes urbem obsidērent.

He promised but with difficulty, with frowns, and grudgingly. Promisit sed difficulter, sed subductis superciliis, sed malignis (niggard) verbis.

This is called *anaphora*.

6. The subject of a Latin sentence should be kept—as far as possible—unchanged all through the sentence: as,

The matter was quickly dispatched and the legions returned. Qua re confecta, legiones redierunt.

When his friends asked him his opinion, he replied as follows.
Ille, sententiam ab amicis rogatus, ita respondit.

N.B.—The use of short coordinate sentences in English necessitates the repetition of the subject under different forms. In Latin the subject when once mentioned, is not again referred to except by a pronoun. See § 11, *a* of Part III.

7. The subject should be taken out of a subordinate clause and put at the head of the sentence: as,

When Caesar heard this, he set out.   Caesar, cum hoc audiisset, profectus est.

If the subject is changed, it should be expressed by the pronoun *is* or *hic*, when the new subject has been already mentioned in the previous sentence: as,

They came to the king at Pergamum. He received them kindly.
Pergamum ad regem venerunt. Is eos comiter excepit.

8. A noun or pronoun should, as far as possible, be kept in the same case all through the sentence: as,

When Midas was a boy, some ants piled grains of corn upon his lips, when he was asleep.   Midae dormienti cum puer esset, formicae in os tritici grana congesserunt.

Note.—This will often involve the use of a subordinate clause (or a participial phrase) for an English main clause: as, *Hannibal ordered him to leave the camp, but he soon returned.*   Qui, cum Hannibalis iussu e castris exiisset, paulo post rediit.

This he persistently repeated and his whole discourse was spent in eulogising virtue.   Quibus constanter dictis, omnis eius oratio in virtute laudanda consumebatur.

9. A noun when the object both of the main and of the subordinate clause, is put at the head of the sentence: as,

If I cannot crush my annoyance, I will conceal it.   Dolorem, si non potero frangere, occultabo.

And, generally speaking, the important word is to be taken and put at the head of the Latin sentence, in order that the subject of discourse may be emphatically and clearly indicated in advance: as,

When they saw that he had escaped the flames, they hurled darts at him and killed him. Quem, ut incendium effugisse viderunt, telis emissis, interfecerunt.

Note.—This will often involve a change of voice (as in the last example) or the use of a pronoun as in the following:

When Hannibal was living in exile at the court of King Prusias, and was of the opinion that the war should be fought out to the end, the king refused. Rex Prusias, cum Hannibali apud se exulanti depugnari placeret, id facere noluit.

Exercise 10.

1. For several days storms followed and they kept us within our camp. 2. Which wealth—if it fell to our lot—we would be dissatisfied with. 3. Desires which arise naturally, are satisfied without difficulty. 4. When Hannibal had reviewed *recenseo* his troops, he set out for Gades. 5. After Alexander had killed his friend, he almost died of sorrow. 6. Do you believe that the mind is strengthened by pleasure and weakened by abstinence? 7. There is no doubt that force would have been repelled by force (46, 2). 8. The matter was universally approved of, and it was entrusted to the general. 9. When the Cretans sent ambassadors to him, he did not take away all hope from them. 10. If the occasion be favorable for the change, we shall effect it with more ease. 11. The augur Tiresias is described (use *fingo*) by the poets as a philosopher, and he is never represented as bewailing his blindness. 12. By the common consent of the competitors, he won the prize for valor, but resigned it to Alcibiades, whom he devotedly loved. 13. Had Croesus been a happy man, he would have prolonged his happiness to the end. 14. Tatius corrupted this man's daughter with gold. She had happened to go outside of the ramparts to seek water. 15. This was observed and they altered their plan. 16. He had taken the city and the troops were marched home. 17. Such was my view and, if the Senate had supported me, the country would be safe. 18. Heaven will requite you in accordance with your deserts. 19. He was tired of his journey and so his slave killed him. 20. This is a kindness which, if you confer it upon me, I shall not forget. 21. They felt more sorrow for the loss of their countrymen than joy at the rout of the enemy. 22. As soon as the enemy saw us, they made a charge, and we were quickly thrown into confusion.

TRANSLATION INTO LATIN.

It will appear, from what has been said, that translation of English into Latin is a process of fusing or re-casting of the English, in order to put into another mould the meaning expressed. *The meaning is retained but the form changed.*

Take, for example, the following passage (from an English historian of Rome) on the retirement of the Gauls after the great invasion:

"The retirement of the invaders requires no explanation. Sudden and violent onslaughts, which swept all before them, gave place to discouragement at anything like prolonged opposition."

It may be noted that: (*a*) There is no Latin word for "*retirement*," "*invaders*," "*explanation*," "*discouragement*," "*opposition*."

(*b*) The personification (so common in English) by which "*retirement*," "*onslaught*" are made the subject of the sentence is rare.

(*c*) The figurative use of words (as in "*sweep*") is, as a usual thing, to be avoided.

By eliminating these characteristically English features (personification, metaphor, abstract nouns), using verbs for the verbal nouns, using the specific name *Galli* for "*invaders*," and changing the form of the narrative from third to first person, the passage at once approximates to the Latin form. Thus:

Neque enim est cur dicam quam ob rem Galli se receperint: quippe qui (*inasmuch as they*) repente et summa vi aggressi, cum iis diu resisteretur, animum demitterent.

The following examples should be studied:

(*a*) ENGLISH PASSAGE.

When Regulus reached Rome, he refused, as being no longer a citizen, either to enter the city or visit his wife and children. The Senate met outside the walls; but, instead of pleading the cause for which he was sent, he urged the Senators by no means to make peace or accept an exchange of prisoners. And this advice the veteran gave, although he knew that death awaited him at Carthage, reminding his hearers that, though military law had consigned to Carthage the possession of his body, his spirit was still Roman.

REMARKS.

1. The subject is taken out and put at the head of the sentence. It is not repeated at *"veteran"*.

2. *"Reminding his hearers,"* signal for indirect: part of a speech.

3. *"Law,"* not to be personified.

4. *"Consigned"*, etc., expressed literally.

TRANSLATION.

Regulus, cum Romam venisset, vel urbem inire vel uxorem liberosque visere, ut non iam civis, nolebat, atque Senatui extra muros convocato suasit neve pacem faceret neve mutationem captivorum acciperet: quae persuadebat quamquam se Karthagini periturum cognoverat: corpus enim suum iure belli esse Karthaginiensium, animum vero adhuc Romanum.

(b) ENGLISH PASSAGE.

So widely had disloyalty spread in Latium, that even some of the citizens of Tusculum, long closely connected with Rome, were found among the prisoners of war made from the Volscian army, and these brought the fidelity of the town into such suspicion that Camillus marched an army against it. A speedy submission, however, and a humble embassy to the Senate averted any actual severity.

REMARKS.

1. The natural subject is Tusculani (people of Tusculum).

2. The personification in *"disloyalty,"* *"fidelity"*, *"submission"*, should not be preserved.

3. The metaphor in *"spread"* should be dropped. Say: *"So many nations revolting"*.

4. *"Bring into suspicion"* = in suspicionem adducere.

Cf. *"To be suspected,"* in suspicionem venire; *"to be forgotten,"* in oblivionem venire.

TRANSLATION.

Tusculani vero quidam inter captivos Volscos reperti, civitatem suam, iam diu foedere cum Romanis coniunctam, in tantam suspicionem adduxerunt, ne (tot populis Latinis deficientibus) deficeret

et ipsa, ut Camillus in eam exercitum duxerit: in quam civitatem, deditione propere facta legationeque ad Senatum missa, nihil tamen saevitum est.

(c) ENGLISH PASSAGE.

The extension of the Roman territory in the course of these wars is marked by the formation of four new tribes. The ten years of comparative peace abroad which followed, were occupied at Rome by the struggle over the Licinian proposals; and during that time, owing to the interruption in the election of the magistrates, the state was scarcely in a position to act with vigor.

REMARKS.

1. The natural subject is Romani, which need not be repeated at "state".

2. The personification in *"extension"* and *"years"* should not be retained.

3. The abstracts *"course"*, *"formation"*, etc., are made concrete.

4. *"Comparative"* = as a general thing = fere.

TRANSLATION.

Romani autem quattuor tribus, agro inter haec bella aucto, addiderunt: sed decem sequentibus annis quamquam externae res quietae fere erant, cum de rogationibus Licinii certaretur comitiaque differrentur, strenue contra hostes agere non poterant.

LIMIT OF SUBORDINATION. THE DETACHED STYLE.

It may be observed, in conclusion, that, though Latin prefers the complex sentence to the compound and subordination to coordination, over coordination and over complication should be avoided, as tending to obscure the clearness of the narrative. The subordination of three, or at most four, statements to the main predication, is suggested as the limit. Whatever is subordinate in English, is of course subordinate in Latin.

For the sake of variety, the detached style is combined with the long Latin periods. It is used, as in English, in graphic, rapid, and detailed description, and, especially in speeches, for dramatic effect. Thus:

Palatinum muniit; sacra dis aliis facit. *He fortified the Palatine and instituted rites in honor of the other gods.*

Bellum ab altero consule prospere gestum; Suessa in deditionem venit, Teanum vi expugnatum. *The military operations of the other consul were successful, Suessa surrendered and Teanum was taken by storm.*

Quid porro quaerendum est? Factumne sit? At constat. A quo? At paret. *But what is the subject of investigation? The fact of the homicide? That is admitted. The author of it? But that is clear.*

PART IV.

SIMPLE NARRATIVE FOR TRANSLATION.

PART IV.

SIMPLE NARRATIVE FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN.

Exercise 1.

Brutus, after his defeat by Antony near Philippi, betook himself to flight to avoid[1] falling into the hands of the enemy. One Licinius, observing[2] a few horsemen pursuing him at full speed, threw himself in their way in order to save the life of his general, telling them that he was Brutus. The horsemen, overjoyed at the news, gave over[3] the pursuit, and despatched messengers to tell Antony that Brutus was taken. Antony, when he received the intelligence, was at a loss how to behave[4] towards the illustrious captive[5]. But he was soon delivered from his uneasiness[6], for Licinius shortly afterwards came up and confessed who he was. In the meantime Brutus succeeded in[7] effecting his escape.

[1] *ne.* [2] *viden.* [3] *desisto.* [4] *se gero.* [5] P. 162, 1. [6] *cura.* [7] omit.

Exercise 2.

When Hannibal, after his banishment[1] from Carthage, came as an exile to Antiochus at Ephesus, he was invited by his host to have an interview with a philosopher by the name of Phormio. The veteran commander (*ille*) said that he had no objection, and, thereupon, that eloquent personage discoursed to him for several hours on the art of war. The rest of the audience[2] were delighted and demanded of Hannibal what he thought of the philosopher. The great general[3] replied that he had listened to many a foolish man before but never to a greater fool[4] than Phormio.

[1] p. 162, 1. [2] p. 87, 5. [3] p. 186, 6, note. [4] adj.

Exercise 3.

Once upon a time there was a certain slave named Androcles, who was so ill treated[1] by his master that his life became unsupportable. Finding no remedy for what he suffered, he at length said to himself, "It is better to die than to continue to live in such hardships and misery as I am obliged to suffer. I am determined, therefore, to run away from my master. If I am taken again, I know

that I shall be punished with a cruel death[2]; but it is better to die
at once than to live in misery. If I escape, I must betake myself
to deserts and woods, inhabited only by wild beasts; but they cannot
use me more cruelly than I have been used by my fellow creatures[3].
Therefore I will rather trust myself with them than continue to be
a miserable slave." Having formed this resolution, he took an
opportunity of leaving his master's house, and hid himself in a
thick forest, which was at some miles' distance from the city. But
here the unhappy man found that he had only escaped from one
kind of misery to experience another.

¹ say: *suffered such things.* ² p. 170, 5. ³ *homo.*

EXERCISE 4.

When the gods had been chased away from Greece and their
realms were being divided among mortals, a certain man obtained
Parnassus as[1] his share and made use of it as a pasturage for asses.
Now the asses found out, some way or other, that the Muses used
to live there and they proceeded to make the following observations[2]:
"It was not for nothing that we were turned loose on Parnassus.
No doubt the fact is[3] that the world is tired of the Muses and it wants
us to sing to it. Surely we shall make our race illustrious, forming
our own choir and lifting up our voices in louder music than the
Nine Sisters ever produced. And in order that no injury may be
done to our fraternity, we will establish among ourselves the regu-
lation[4] that no individual shall be admitted to Parnassus whose
voice is deficient in the true asinine charm."

¹ *pro.* ² *vb.* ³ *profecto.* ⁴ *vb.*

EXERCISE 5.

It is said that Semiramis by an exceedingly clever ruse gained a
throne[1] from a very low rank of life. She had by degrees obtained
such influence[2] over king Ninus, her husband, that nothing was so
great that she would not dare to ask it of the king, or that the king
would venture to refuse her, if she did ask it. So having once thrown
out in conversation that there was something that she desired very
much and the king having told her to name it openly and fearlessly,
whatever it might be: "I should wish you," she said, "to grant me
this favor, that I may sit on your royal seat and administer

justice for a single day and that all shall obey me just as[1] they
obey you."

[1] p. 177, l.   [2] valeo   [3] jus dicere.   [4] quem ad modum   [5] nte.

Exercise 6.

The king laughed and granted her request. Immediately it was
proclaimed that on an appointed day all men should obey the
commands of Semiramis; that such was the king's pleasure; that
for that day she was placed over them all with sovereign authority
and power. When the day arrived, the queen sat on the throne in
royal pomp[1]. Vast crowds assemble before her. She at first issued
some commands of no great importance[3]. When she saw that all
men obeyed her in earnest[4], whatever she commanded, she orders
the royal body-guard to arrest the king himself; they arrest him.
To bind him in chains; he is bound. To put him to death; he is put
to death. In this manner her reign of a day was made perpetual.

[1] cultus   [2] use onverro   [3] momentum   [4] serio.

Exercise 7.

The enemy was[1] foiled in his first attempt and immediately
altered his plans. He abandoned all idea of a siege and proceeded
to blockade the place. A strong garrison was stationed on the
neighboring hill and a camp was pitched on the level ground on the
banks of the river. To enable him to ferry troops over at different[2]
points as occasion offered and at the same time to prevent supplies
of corn from being carried up the river for the use of the besieged, a
large fleet was got together and the only fortress on the other side
of the river still defended, was easily captured. An officer, who
happened to be stationed with a handful of men on the bridge, had
witnessed the capture of the fort by the invaders, and now saw them
descending the hill at full speed. Knowing that, if he deserted his
post, they would immediately cross the river, he solemnly implored
his countrymen to destroy the bridge with fire and steel. There-
upon he advanced to meet the enemy and maintained his position[5]
until warned, by the shouts of those who were toiling in his rear,
that they had accomplished their object.

[1] participle.   [2] alius et alius.   [3] per occasiones   [4] say to.   [5] say
himself.

14

Exercise 8.

During the course of the siege[1], two events worthy of being recorded[2] occurred. A young Roman named Mucius, resolved to deliver his country by assassinating Porsenna. He accordingly went over to the Etruscan camp: but, ignorant of the King's person[3], he killed the royal secretary instead of the king. Seized and threatened with torture, he thrust his right hand into the fire of an altar blazing near-by, to show his enemy how little he regarded pain, and by this heroic act struck terror into the heart of the hostile king. Again, one of the hostages given to the king was a noble maiden of the name of Cloelia. This young lady, eluding the sentries, escaped from the royal camp, which was pitched at no great distance from the river, and, swimming across the stream, returned to her home. Ambassadors were at once sent by the Etruscans to demand her surrender and to say that the king would regard a refusal[4] as a virtual[5] violation of the peace. The hostage was accordingly restored, but the king, filled with admiration[4] for the exploit, sent her back in safety to her friends.

[1] use *obsideo* and a vb.   [2] p. 111, 2b.   [3] use *qualis*.   [4] vb.   [5] omit.

Exercise 9.

To be turned into a continuous oral. Al. Magna vis Germanorum as the subject.)

The defeat and rout of the cavalry increased the panic of the Germans, and they saw disaster staring them in the face[1]. A large body of men, who had been completely surrounded by the English troops and were fighting in a ring[2], seeing no hope of succor which would enable them to maintain their position, broke through our line and escaped. But they were prevented by a blinding storm of sleet[4] from seeing where they were going, and rushing pell-mell[5] into the river, they were carried away by the current and drowned[6].

[1] p. 177, 1.   [2] *in orbe.*   [3] omit.   [4] say: *snow mixed with rain.*
[5] *ruentes   absumuntur in mortem.*

Exercise 10.

It is related by the Roman historians that Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, was a man of remarkable mildness[1] of temper. It is said, among other things, that certain citizens of Tarentum once spoke

disparagingly[2] of him at a public[3] banquet in that city. Summoning[4] certain of those who were said to have been present on the occasion, he inquired of them whether the words that had reached his ears had really been spoken or not. One of the citizens ingenuously replied that, if wine had not failed them, what they had really said would have been mere child's play[5] compared "to the things they had intended to say, and by this frank admission of the truth[7] turned the king's wrath into laughter.

[1] adj. = *maledico*. [3] omit. [4] *arcesso*. [5] *ludus*. [6] *prae*. [7] *confessio*.

Exercise 11.

The letter which the Consuls sent to King Pyrrhus on this occasion was to the following effect[1]: 'The Roman consuls send greeting to King Pyrrhus. For injuries received we intend to offer you the most determined opposition[2], and in order at last to conquer you in the field and also as a proof [3] of the honorable character[4] of the people of Rome, we are anxious that your life should be preserved. Your most intimate friend has demanded a reward from us for compassing your death.[5] This offer we have rejected with scorn. At the same time we judge it proper[6] to send you this information, that we may be acquitted at the bar of the other nations of the earth of having instigated the crime. Take heed[7] or you will perish."

[1] use *verbum*. [2] vb. [3] *documentum*. [4] *indoles*. [5] use *opprimo, crush;* Pf. Subj. [6] use *visum est, it has seemed good.* [7] *nisi cavebis.*

Exercise 12.

This battle[1] taught Pyrrhus the difficulty[1] of the enterprise he had undertaken. Before the engagement, when he saw the Romans forming their line as they crossed the river, he said to his officers: "In war, at any rate, these barbarians are not barbarous;" and afterwards, as he saw the Roman dead lying upon the field with all their wounds in front[3], he exclaimed, "If these were my soldiers, or if I were their general, we should conquer the world." And, though his loss[1] had been inferior to that of the Romans, still so large a number of his officers and best troops had fallen that he said: "Another such victory, and I must return to Epirus alone." He therefore resolved to avail himself of his victory to conclude, if possible, an advantageous peace.

[1] abl. [2] adj. [3] *in adversa fronte vulneratus.* [4] vb.

EXERCISE 13.

With ten thousand men Caesar sailed from Portus Itius, to the point where he saw the white cliffs of Britain shining over the waters. The Britons saw the enemy coming, and drew themselves up on the shore to prevent them from landing. Whenever[1] the Romans tried to leave their ships, the brave islanders[2] showered stones on them with such fury that the soldiers began to despair of ever being able to get to shore. At last a Roman standard-bearer jumped into the sea, calling on the soldiers to follow him and not allow their flag[4] to be taken by the enemy. Fired by his brave act, the Romans dashed after him, and at last succeeded in getting to land.

[1] p. 105, 6.   [2] p. 186, 6 note.   [3] p. 177, 1.   [4] *signum.*

EXERCISE 14.

Fortune in another quarter served the Romans no less[1] effectually. The Macedonian ambassadors, after having concluded[2] their treaty with Hannibal, made their way back into Bruttium in safety, and embarked to return to[3] Greece. But their ship was taken, off[4] the Calabrian coast, by the Roman squadron on that station[5], and the ambassadors with all their papers[6] were sent prisoners to Rome. A vessel which had been of their company[7], escaped the Romans and informed the king what had happened. He was obliged, therefore, to send a second embassy[8] to Hannibal, as the former treaty had never reached him; and, although this second mission[8] went and returned safely, yet the loss of time was irreparable[9], and nothing could be done until another year.

[1] *aeque.*   [2] *pango.*   [3] *ad.*   [4] *apud.*   [5] *in statione ibi esse.*   [6] *litterae*   [7] *use una.*   [8] *concrete.*   [9] *reparo.*

EXERCISE 15.

The victory was long doubtful. The wing commanded by Decius was giving way before the terrible onset[1] of the Gauls, when he determined to imitate the example of his father, and to devote himself and the enemy to destruction. Consecrated accordingly to Death by the chief priest, he rushed against the enemy and fell fighting in the front line. His death gave fresh courage to his men, and the Romans gained a complete and decisive victory[2]. Gellius

Egnatius, the Samnite general, who had taken the most active part in forming the coalition[3], was slain. But, though the League was thus broken up, the Samnites continued the struggle for five years longer.

[1] *hendiadys.* [2] two vbs. [3] *foedus.*

EXERCISE 16.

Meanwhile the scanty[1] remnant[2] that had escaped from the battlefield to the city had formed no plan of defence. To defend the city was impossible. The fugitives had returned without arms, and how could those who had crossed the river in safety re-enter the city under the eyes of the victors? They determined, however, to hold the citadel with the men most capable of defending it and to supply them with all the food in the city. These picked men numbered a thousand, and, although the enemy charged again and again up[3] the slope, they met with such determined resistance[4] from this small garrison that they were compelled at last to desist from their attempts.

[1] p. 171. [2] *manus.* [3] *per.* [4] vb.

EXERCISE 17.

Both Marius and Sulla served as lieutenants to the consuls in this war, and commanded separate[1] armies in separate parts of Italy. But Marius performed nothing in it answerable to[2] his great name and former glory; his advanced age had increased his caution[3]. After so many triumphs and consulships, he was fearful of a reverse[4] of fortune. He kept himself wholly on the defensive and like Fabius of old[5], chose to tire out the enemy by declining a battle, without suffering the enemy, however, to gain any advantage over him. Sulla, on the other hand, was ever active and enterprising. He had not yet obtained the consulship, and was fighting for it, as it were, in the sight of his fellow-citizens, so that he was constantly urging the enemy to a battle, glad of every occasion to display his military talents and eclipse[6] the fame of Marius.

[1] *alius alius.* [2] *pro.* [3] adj. [4] vb. [5] *ille.* [6] p. 177, 1.

EXERCISE 18.

Famine had now reached such a pitch[1] that the besieged had actually[2] begun to eat the leather of their shields, when the Gauls

declared their willingness[3] to accept a money payment as the price[4] of evacuating the city[5]. Their host was melting away[6] with disease and they had received the intelligence that the Venetians, taking advantage of the absence of the fighting men, had invaded Gallic territory. For seven months with stubborn courage[7] they refused to raise the siege until at last it was agreed that the Gauls should receive a thousand pounds of gold, provided they withdrew with all their forces from the territory of Rome. At the weighing of the gold, the Gallic chieftain not only used false weights[7] but with insolent bravado[7] flung his sword and belt into the scale, exclaiming, "Woe to the vanquished".

¹ use *eo.*   ² omit.   ³ vb.   ⁴ use *eā condicione.*   ⁵ *ex urbe excedere.* ⁶ *minuo.*   ⁷ *hendiad.*

EXERCISE 19.

Confident that he could reduce[1] the Aequians in a single battle, the Roman general immediately advanced with a large army which he drew up in fighting order on the plain. Thither the enemy also advanced as soon as it was light. The battle[2] was a spirited one, but the Romans were in the end victorious and drove the Aequians back to their camp. This engagement compelled the admission on the part of the enemy[3] that the Romans were their superiors in the art of fighting pitched battles[4], and they now resorted to predatory incursions. In this guerilla[5] warfare they were eminently successful, and spread consternation even to the gates of Rome.

¹ *vinco.*   ² vb.   ³ *confiteor.*   ⁴ *in acie pugnare.*   ⁵ omit.   ⁶ use *rem bene gerere.*

EXERCISE 20.

The Senate felt great regret at the military failure[1] before Veii and were as much exasperated as the plebs at the defeat of the army and the destruction of the siege works by fire. They accordingly passed a decree ordering all the magistrates to abdicate at once and a new election to be held. Some opposition[2] was offered to the execution of this decree by those concerned ; but when one of the senators threatened to compel by force the abdication ordered by the Senate, all opposition ceased. Magistrates were immediately elected at the Popular Assembly to come[3] into office not on the 1st of January, which was the regular day for entering office, but upon

October 1st. The delinquent¹ generals of the previous year were then brought to trial and condemned by the people to pay a large fine (multa) for incompetence in their command⁴ and treason⁵ to their country.

¹ use *rem male gerere*. ² vb. ³ *reus*. ⁴ *inire*. ⁵ use *delinquo*.
⁶ use *laedere maiestatem populi R.*

EXERCISE 21.

No sooner had the Gauls heard this, than they sent word to their kinsfolk, and, being reinforced by great multitudes, took the road to Rome. In the meanwhile the Roman allies had mustered at the Senate's call and everyone who could bear arms was supplied with them. It is clear that the whole of the Roman force took up a position near Veii to watch the enemy's movements¹, as was the case in A.U.C. 121 when an irruption of the same people was apprehended. For our narrative relates that the Roman army crossed the Tiber and marched along its banks to the Allia, that is to say, the generals had received sudden intelligence that the enemy was advancing by forced marches upon the city and was already close at hand. They hoped to prevent him from ravaging the country before it. If² they had only refrained from indulging⁴ in such a hope! A disaster before the walls of the city need not necessarily have involved its destruction.⁵

¹ say: *what they would do*. ² *magnus*. ³ use *utinam*. ⁴ *habeo*.
⁵ use *ita-ut: ita enim vinci potuere ut non.*

EXERCISE 22.

Soon the whole route was blocked with snow and the advance of the column was extremely slow. Despair appeared on every face. But difficulty and hardship only served to signalize the splendid military qualities of the commander¹. The whole army was exhausted with fighting and the toil of road-making (use *munio*), but they had at last reached the summit of the Alps, and now Italy was almost in sight. A rest of two days was allowed to recruit, and the camp was pitched upon the top of the ridge. During these two days, he drew up the army on a height which commanded a distant view,² and pointed out the level plains of Italy, stretching beneath the mountains. "These mountains," he said, "are the

ramparts of Italy; when they are once scaled, the Roman citadel
will soon be in our hands."

[1] say: *how great a general H. was.* [2] *longe prospectari poterat.*

EXERCISE 23.

(*For Indirect Narration.*)

The gift of pay[1] in return for military service was welcome to the
army, but not equally welcome to the tribunes of the people. "You
will find," they said, "that this gift of the Senate's, like the robe
(*palla*) of Nessus, is steeped in poison. If you banish yourselves
from your homes in this way, you will not be able to elect magis-
trates or to institute reforms[2]. In fact the liberty of the Commons
of Rome has been sold for money. You have accepted pay for your
service in the field and, in return for that, you will be considered
the slaves of the Senate. Who can tell how long you will have to
remain in the field? Who can tell when you will be allowed to visit
your homes? Such slavery as this was never known in the country,
even under the rule of dictator and decemvir."

[1] *aes.* [2] *res novare.*

EXERCISE 24.

It is here that tradition places[1] the scene[2] of Hannibal's vision[3].
He saw in his sleep, says the story[4], a youth of angelic beauty,
who announced himself as commissioned[5] by Jupiter to lead him
on his way to Italy. He had but to fix his eyes on his guide[6] and
follow him. At first a great awe,[7] the story went on to say, fell
upon him, and he followed, looking neither to the right hand nor
to the left. But after a while, as he began to ask himself what it
was on which he was forbidden to look back, he could no longer
control his eyes; so he looked and saw behind him a monstrous
serpent moving forwards,[8] while trees and houses fell crashing
beneath it[9]. A storm-cloud and a peal of thunder[10] followed. Then,
as he asked what the monstrous form portended, he heard a voice
say: "It is the desolation[11] of Italy: go on thy way[12], nor question
further"

[1] use *trado.* [2] say: *what happened about.* [3] *somnium.* [4] indir.
narr.; say: *etenim in quiete visum esse.* [5] *mitto.* [6] imperat. in indir.
[7] adj.; *terri.* [8] use *cum strage.* [10] *dragon cœli.* [11] *vastitas.* [12] *porro.*

EXERCISE 25.

Day dawned[1]; the Roman army broke up its camp[2] and began to enter the defile, while the natives, finding their positions occupied by the enemy, at first offered no opposition to the march. But when they saw the long line of the Carthaginians' army winding along[4] the mountain, and the cavalry and baggage cattle struggling[5] with the difficulties of the road, the temptation to plunder was too strong to be resisted[6], and from many points above the road[7], they rushed down upon the Carthaginians. The confusion was terrible: for the track was so narrow that the least disorder[9] pushed[9] the baggage-cattle down the steep, and the horses, wounded by the barbarians' missiles, plunged about wildly[10] in their pain and terror, and increased the mischief.

[1] adv. [2] abl. abs. [3] statio. [4] transeo. [5] impedior. [6] say: conquered by the desire of booty. [7] superiora. [8] abl. instr. [9] use devolvo. [10] use consternor, be excited.

EXERCISE 26.

On the 9th of December, when the flight of Catiline was known, Cicero delivered his second speech, which was addressed[1] to the people in the Forum. The Senate then proceeded[2] to declare[3] Catiline and Manlius public enemies, and decreed that Antonius should go forth to attack them while Cicero should remain to guard the city. Cicero was anxious to obtain other evidence[4], which would justify[5] him in apprehending the conspirators within the walls. This was fortunately supplied by the ambassadors of the Allobroges, who were now at Rome, having been sent to seek[6] relief[7] from certain real or alleged[8] grievances. Their suit, however, had not prospered[9] and Lentulus, conceiving[10] that their indignation might be made available for his own purpose, had opened a negotiation[11] with them and disclosed to them the object of Catiline's plot.

[1] habeo. [2] omit. [3] iudico. [4] indicia. [5] use fretus and iure. [6] de. [7] levo. [8] seu vera seu ficta. [9] say: which thing had not succeeded for them. [10] indir. narr. [11] say: had begun to deal (agere) with them.

EXERCISE 27.

But they thought it more prudent to reveal all to Q. Fabius Sanga, the patron of their State who acquainted Cicero. By the instruction[1] of the latter, the ambassadors affected great zeal in the under-

taking[2] and obtained a tablet from the conspirators signed by
Lentulus, Cethegus, and others. They quitted Rome soon after
midnight on the 3rd of December, accompanied by one T. Vol-
turcius, who was charged with despatches for Catiline. The am-
bassadors were seized as they were crossing the Mulvian Bridge
by two of the praetors, who had been stationed in ambush to
intercept them. Cicero instantly summoned Lentulus, Cethegus,
and the other conspirators to his presence. Lentulus being praetor,
the consul led him by the hand to the temple of Concord, where the
Senate was already met; the rest of the accused followed, closely[4]
guarded. Volturcius, finding escape impossible, agreed[5], upon
receiving public assurance of his safety[6], to make a full confession. ¶

¹ iussu. ² say: *pretended to be zealous in the matter.* ³ excipio.
⁴ diligenter. ⁵ use: ex composito. " ad. publica data. ⁷ say: *revealed
all.*

Exercise 28.

Cicero placed[1] the whole matter before the Senate in his third
speech. Again he summoned the Senate to decide the fate of the
conspirators. A long debate followed[2]. At first all the speakers
were for inflicting the punishment of death till it came to the turn[4]
of Julius Caesar, who was praetor elect, to state his views. After
he had pointed out that the penalty proposed was illegal and that
its consequences would be very serious[5], he ended his speech with
the recommendation[6] that the property of the conspirators should
be confiscated, and that they should be sent to the various free
towns and there kept, at the pleasure of the State, in perpetual
custody.

¹ refero. ² say: *in many words it was debated* (ago). ³ say:
eased to and fro (ango). ⁴ omit. ⁵ say: *serious things grave would
result* (evenio). ⁶ censeo, move.

Exercise 29.

There were other members of the party who were not prepared
to wait and the leadership[1] of this faction seemed open to the man
who should be able to grasp it. Such a man was found in L. Sergius
Catiline. An aristocrat by birth[2], he could only hope to gratify his
wishes by the attainment of office[3], and he could only hope to
attain office by service rendered to one of the great parties in the

State. Earlier in life he is found in the Sullan party, and some of its worst excesses[1] were attributed to him. Since then, he was said to have removed wife and son by poison, to make room for a new wife. Such stories, however, circulated[5] as they were by his political opponents[6], should not find too easy credence[7].

[1] *principatus.* [2] *nobili loco natus.* [3] *honor.* [4] *facinus.* [5] *iacto.*
[6] say: *those who opposed him in administering the state.* [7] p. 175, 4.

EXERCISE 30.

If he had imprisoned and punished him at this time as he deserved, the whole faction were prepared to raise a clamor[1] against him and to[2] represent Cicero's administration as a tyranny and the plot as a forgery[3] contrived to support himself[4]. By driving Catiline into rebellion[5], he made all men see the reality of their danger; while, from an exact account of Catiline's troops, he knew them to be so *quin* unequal to those of the state, that there was no doubt of his being destroyed[6], if he could be pushed to the necessity of declaring his intentions, before his other projects were ripe for execution. He knew, also, that if Catiline was once driven out of the city and separated from his accomplices, they would ruin themselves by their own rashness, and be easily drawn into any trap which he should lay for them[7].

[1] *conclamo in.* [2] say: *accuse him to be governing like a king (regie).*
[3] *fingo.* [4] *prosum.* [5] *bellum patriae infero.* [6] p. 145, 2. [7] *insidiis irretio.*

EXERCISE 31.

It will seem strange to some that Cicero, when he had certain information of Catiline's treason, instead of[1] seizing him in the city, not only suffered but urged his escape, and forced him, as it were, to make war upon the country. But there was good reason for what he did, as he frequently intimates in his speeches: Cicero himself had many enemies among the nobility, and Catiline many secret friends, and though he was perfectly informed of the extent[2] of the plot, yet the proofs not being ready to lay[3] before the public, Catiline's dissimulation[4] still prevailed, and persuaded great numbers of his innocence[5].

[1] use *cum.* [2] use *pateo.* [3] *refero.* [4] abl. instr. [5] *concrete.*

still — etiam nunc (pres.)
— etiam tum (past)

Exercise 32.

He presses them, therefore, to turn their whole care[1] upon the State; that it was not a Gracchus, or a Saturninus, who was now in judgment before them, but traitors, whose design it was to destroy the city by fire and the Senate and people by massacre; who had solicited the Gauls, and the very slaves, to join with them in their treason[2], of which they had all been convicted by letters, seals, and their own confessions.   That the Senate, by several previous acts, had already condemned them: by their public thanks to him; by deposing Lentulus from his praetorship; by committing traitors to custody; by decreeing a thanksgiving; by rewarding the witnesses; but, as if nothing had yet been done, he resolved to propose to them anew the question both of the fact and the punishment; that, whatever they intended to do, it must be determined on before night; that the mischief was spread wider than they imagined[3]: it had not only infected Italy, but crossed the Alps, and seized the provinces, and it was not to be suppressed by delay[4] and irresolution, but by quick and vigorous measures.

¹ *incumbo.* ² *scelus.* ³ *latius omnium opinione.* ⁴ *differo.*

Exercise 33.

What gave the greater spirit to the authors of these attempts, was Caius Antonius' advancement to the consulship; they knew him to be of the same principles[1], and embarked[2] in the same designs as themselves, which, by his authority, they now hoped to carry into effect. Cicero was aware of this and foresaw the mischief of a colleague equal to him in power, yet opposite in views, and prepared to frustrate all his endeavors for the public service; so that his first care, after their election, was to gain the confidence[3] of Antonius, and to draw him from his old engagements[4] to the interests of the Republic, being convinced[5] that all the success of his own administration as consul depended upon it.

¹ *sentio.* ² *conor.* ³ *use: sibi fido.* ⁴ *necessitudo.* ⁵ *indir. narr.*

Exercise 34.

But Cicero had still with him not only all the best, but much the greatest part of the city, who determined to run all hazards[1], and expose their lives for his safety. He was more than a match for[2]

ail the strength of Clodius and the consuls, if the triumvirate would only stand neutral. Before things came, therefore, to extremity, he thought it advisable to press Pompey in such a manner, as to know for certain what they had to expect from him. Some of his chief friends undertook this task, and with a numerous attendance of citizens, went to find him at his Alban villa, and to intercede with him not to desert[4] the fortunes of his old friend Cicero.

audeo. *super o.* *visum est.* [4] *desitero.*

EXERCISE 35.

Pompey received them civilly, though coldly; referring them to the consuls, and declaring, that he, being only in a private station, could not pretend to take the field against an armed tribune, without public authority. But if the consuls, by a decree of the Senate, would enter into the affair[1], he would presently arm himself in their defence. With this answer they addressed themselves[2] again to the consuls, but with no better success than before. Gabinius treated them[3] rudely[4]; Piso calmly told them that he was not so stout a consul as Cicero had been; that there was no need of arms or fighting; that Cicero might save the Country a second time, if he pleased, by withdrawing himself. If he stayed, it would cost an indefinite quantity of civil blood; and in short, that neither he, nor his colleague, would desert the party of the tribune Clodius.

[1] *interesse.* [2] *consulo.* *se gerere.* [4] *insolenter.*

EXERCISE 36.

The new consuls, on entering office, immediately introduced a motion[1] in the Assembly for Cicero's recall. It was not easy however to carry a law for this purpose. Clodius, though no longer tribune, had adherents in the new college, who interposed their veto[2]. The motion, dropped[3] for the moment, was presently renewed; and Clodius entered the Forum at the head of a retinue fully prepared for any violence. A regular battle followed, which left Clodius master of the field[4]. For some days Rome was at his mercy[5]. With his own hand he fired the temple of the Nymphs and destroyed the consorial registers there. He attacked his enemies' houses, and many persons were slain in these riotous assaults[6].

[1] *legem ferre ut.* [2] *intercedo+d.* *omitto.* [4] *omnium rerum potiri* [5] *in eius potestate* [6] *hendiadys turbae et oppugnationes.*

Exercise 37.

No public attempt was made to stop him. But a young noble, named Milo, bold and reckless as Clodius himself, raised a body of gladiators at his own charge, and succeeded in checking[1] the lawless violence[2] of the demagogue by the use of violence as lawless. The bill for Cicero's recall was now again brought forward, but was not passed till the month of August. Meantime, the impatient[1] statesman had continued to accuse his friends of coldness and insincerity[1]. But when the law was passed, all his troubles vanished like a cloud[5]. Early in September, about a year and four months after his departure, **he approached the city. From the Porta Capena to the Capitol the steps of the temples and every place of vantage[6] were thronged by multitudes, who testified their satisfaction[7] at his restoration by loud applause.**

[1] two vbs.   [2] two nouns.   [3] clause.   [4] adj.   [5] simile to be retained.
[6] *unde prospici potuit.*   [7] adj.

Exercise 38.

We have seen that Caesar, on his departure for Spain, left the city under the charge of Lepidus[1], and Italy under that of M. Antonius. In Rome itself the members of the nobility who had remained, or had lately returned, were either devoted to Caesar's cause or avowedly neutral. The middle class of citizens was also generally favorable to him; it was only the licentious and versatile mob[4] that could cause any anxiety to the prefect of the city. But this mob required to be constantly amused and humored[5], and was ready at any moment to raise clamors in the theatres and other public places, which excited the hopes of the Pompeians, and hindered the tranquillization[6] of men's minds throughout the country[7].

[1] *use praeposito.*   [2] *aperte — equites.*   [4] *effrenata et mutabiles.*   [5] *delecto et delere.*   [6] adj.   [7] *per omnes partes et p.*

Exercise 39.

The struggle was over[1]; Caesar had ceased to breathe[2], and for a moment the eyes of his assassins encountered each other across his body. When they looked around them, the hall was already vacant. The senators had fled with precipitation; centurions, lictors, and attendants, who had accompanied the dictator within the precincts

of the curia, had vanished from the scene, and the harangue which Brutus was about to utter commanded no listeners. Antonius, whose detention at the door gave him the fairest[1] opportunity of escape, had slipped through the crowd, exchanged clothes with a slave or a client, and made his way unperceived to his house in the Carinae. *Fly, citizens, shut your doors, fly!* was the cry of the panic-stricken senators; for none could tell where the next blow of the assassins might fall, or what movement their deed[4] might excite among the murdered man's adherents.

_{[1] *or iam coactem.* [2] *moveo.* [3] *summus.* [4] *abl.*}

EXERCISE 40.

The assassination of Caesar was viewed with conflicting feelings[1] by the Roman people. At first there was a disposition[2] to applaud the conspirators as men who had rescued Rome from the danger of having a king imposed[3] upon them. Among those who took this view of the situation was Cicero, who did not hesitate to express openly his approval of the deed. But the conspirators were too merciful for their own interest[4]. Had they gone further, as some suggested, and removed Mark Antony, Caesar's intimate friend and the custodian of his papers and will, the revolution[5] they sought to bring about might have been accomplished. But Antony was spared, and although he pretended at first to be desirous of maintaining amicable relations with Brutus and Cassius, it soon became evident that he was waiting for a suitable opportunity to make political capital[6] out of his position as Caesar's heir.

[1] *alii alia sentire.* [2] *impf.* [3] *rex constitui.* [4] use *sibi consulere*; p. 111, 2c. [5] *id quod.* [6] *potentiam augeo.*

EXERCISE 41.

From this moment, Cicero resolved, at all hazards, to support the credit[1] of the men and to commend their act, which he believed the only means of recovering popular government. He knew that the people were all on their side[2], and, as long as force was removed, that they were masters of the city. His advice[4], therefore, was to use their present advantage, and, in the consternation[5] of Caesar's party, and the zeal and union of their own, that Brutus and Cassius,

as practors should call the Senate into the Capitol and proceed to
some vigorous decrees[4] for the security of the public tranquillity.

¹ *auctoritas.*   ² *res publica.*   ³ *a se stare.*   ⁴ indir. narr. (imperat.)
⁵ use *lepidus*

Exercise 42.

The confirmation of Caesar's *acta* by the Senate gave Antony an
opportunity of securing enormous powers[1], and soon made it plain
that rejoicing[2] on the part of the Optimates was premature[3].   It
was left to the consuls to decide what these *acta* were—with the
help indeed of a committee (*consilium*), which seems, however, not
to have met,—and Antony, who had got Caesar's papers from his
widow Calpurnia, was able to carry on the administration un-
checked.[4]   He conciliated Lepidus by allowing his election as pontifex
maximus, and Dolabella by allowing him to take the consulship; he
obtained the disposal of a vast sum of money deposited by Caesar
in the temple of Ops, and he was encouraged[6] to ignore all opposition[7]
by the evidence of popular feeling in his favor.[8]

¹ *potentia magna.*   ² vb.   ³ *citius iusto.*   ⁴ abl. abs.; use *nemo.*
⁵ *potior*   ⁶ *ardeo*   ⁷ *concedo*   ⁸ use *populi favor.*

Exercise 43.

At first it was decreed in the Senate that an amnesty should be
granted[1] for all that had occurred, and Brutus and Cassius betook
themselves to the Capitol to watch the trend of public opinion[2].
Caesar's soldiers came into the city in great numbers.   The Senate
was found utterly unequal to the situation[3]; it began[4] with advo-
cating[5] measures tending to reconciliation[6], and ended[7] with con-
ferring divine honours on Caesar, acknowledging the validity of
his ordinances[8], and ratifying his will and ordering it to be read
to the public.

¹ *oblivione delere.*   ² *quid homines sentiant.*   ³ *rem gerere.*   ⁴ *primo·*
⁵ *suadeo*   ⁶ *concordia.*   ⁷ *postremo.*   ⁸ *acta confirmare.*

Exercise 44.

Cicero was now ready for his voyage[1], and had provided three
yachts to transport himself and his attendants to Greece; but, as there
was a report of legions arriving daily from abroad and of pirates also at

sea, he thought it would be safer to sail in company with Brutus and Cassius, who had drawn together a fleet of good force, which now lay upon the coast[2]. He gave several hints of this design to Brutus, who received it more coldly[3] than he expected, and seemed uncertain and irresolute about the time of his own going. He resolved, therefore, to embark without further delay, though in some perplexity to the last about the expediency of the voyage, and jealous[4] of his being censured as a deserter of his country. Atticus kept up his spirits[5] by assuring him, constantly, in his letters, that all people approved of it at Rome, provided that he kept his word to return by the first of the new year.

[1] *cursus.* [2] *in vinculis consistere.* [3] *remisse.* [4] *vereor.* [5] *animum erigo.*

EXERCISE 45.

This gave Antony a pretext to charge Cicero afterwards in public with being privy to the conspiracy and the principal adviser of it. But it is certain[1] that he was not at all acquainted with it; for though he had the strictest friendship[2] with the chief actors[3], and they the greatest confidence in him, yet his age, character, and dignity rendered him wholly unfit to bear a part in an attempt of that nature, and to embark himself[4] in an affair so desperate, with a number of men who, excepting a few of their leaders, were all either too young to be trusted[5], or too obscure even to be known by him.

[1] *inter omnes constat.* [2] *concrete.* [3] *principes coniurationis.* [4] *honor.*
[5] p. 111, 2*c.*

EXERCISE 46.

In his reply to Antony's charge, Cicero does not deny his expectation of the assassination, freely owns his joy[1] at it, and thanks Antony for giving him the honor, which he had not merited, of bearing a part in it[2]. He calls it the most glorious act which had ever been done, not only in that but in any other city; in which men were more forward to claim a share[3] which they had not, than to dissemble that which they had; that Brutus's reason for calling upon him, was his wish to signify that he was then emulating his achievements by an act not unlike to those which he himself had performed; that if to wish Caesar's death was a crime, to rejoice at it was the same.

[1] *laetor de.* [2] *conscium fuisse.* [3] *dictaturos esse se conscios fuisse potius quam.*

15—

EXERCISE 47.

The Senate met again the next day, when Antony thought fit[1] to absent himself, and leave the stage clear to Cicero[2]. Cicero accordingly appeared, and delivered the first of those speeches, which as being imitations of the speeches of Demosthenes[3], were called afterwards his Philippics. He opens his speech[5] with an account of the motives of his late voyage and sudden return; of his interview with Brutus, and his regret at leaving him. "At Velia," he says, "I saw Brutus. With what grief I saw him, I need not tell you; I could not but think it scandalous[6] for me to return to a city, from which he was forced to retire, and to find myself safe in any place, where he could not be so; yet Brutus was not so much moved by it as I, but, supported by the consciousness of his noble act[7], shewed not the least concern[8] for his own case."

[1] *videor, seem good.*   [2] say: *that M. Tullius might speak freely.*
[3] *venit in Senatum.*   [4] use *imitor.*   [5] *in prima parte orationis narrat.*
[6] *turpis.*   [7] *facti conscientia elatus.*   [8] use *sollicitus.*

EXERCISE 48.

In speaking afterwards of this day's debate[1], Cicero says, that while the rest of the Senate behaved like slaves, he alone shewed himself to be free; and though he spoke, indeed, with less freedom than it had been his custom to do, yet it was with more than the dangers, with which he was threatened, seemed to allow. Antony was greatly enraged at his speech, and summoned another meeting of the Senate for the nineteenth of September, where he again required Cicero's attendance[2], being resolved to answer him in person, and justify his own conduct[3]. For this end he employed himself[4], during the interval, in preparing the materials of a speech[5], and declaiming against Cicero in his villa near Tibur.

[1] *disceptatio.*   [2] *adesse iussit.*   [3] *sua facta probare.*   [4] *se occupare.*
[5] *in rebus parandis e quibus.*

EXERCISE 49.

Meanwhile another actor appeared upon the scene[1]. This was young Octavius. He had been but six months in the camp at Apollonia; but in that short time had formed a close friendship with M. Agrippa, a young man of his own age, who possessed great

abilities for active life[2], but could not boast of any distinguished ancestry. As soon as the news of his uncle's assassination reached the camp, his friend Agrippa recommended Octavius to appeal to the troops and march upon Rome. But the youth, with a wariness beyond his years[3], resisted these bold counsels. Landing near Brundisium almost alone, he there first heard that Caesar's will had been published, and that he was declared Caesar's heir. He at once accepted the dangerous honor.

[2] no metaphor. *ad res agendas.* [3] compar. *aequum pro.*

Exercise 50.

But Cicero could not yet be persuaded to coöperate[1] with Octavian. He suspected[2] his youth and want of experience; he thought that he had not strength enough to deal with Antony, and, above all, that he had no good disposition[3] towards the conspirators. He thought it impossible, in short, that he should ever be a friend to them, and was persuaded rather, that, if ever he got the upper hand[4], his uncle's acts would be more violently enforced, and his death more cruelly avenged than by Antony himself. These considerations[5] withheld Cicero from a union with Octavian, till the exigencies of the situation made it absolutely necessary; nor did he consent at last, without making it an express condition, that Octavian should employ all his forces in defence of the common liberty. But his chief care still was, to arm him only with power sufficient to crush Antony, yet so checked and limited that he should not be able to oppress the country.

[1] *unā agere.* [2] *suspectam habeo.* [3] *faveo.* [4] *plus posse.* [5] *exerceo.* [6] *abl.*

Exercise 51.

On the opening of the year[1], the city was in great expectation to see what measures the new consuls, Hirtius and Pansa, would pursue. They had been at school[2], as it were, all the summer to Cicero, forming the plan of their administration, and taking lessons of government from him[4], and they seem to have been brought over to his views[5] of establishing the peace and liberty of the Country on the foundation of an amnesty[6]. But their great obligations[7] to Caesar, and their long engagements with that party, to which they

owed all their fortunes, had left some scruples[8] in them, which gave a check to their zeal, and disposed them to act with more moderation against old friends than the condition of the times would allow.

¹ say: *from the Kalends of January.* ² *se tradere in disciplinam* (*dat.*). ³ *capere consilia*+gen. of gerundive. ⁴ *how they should administer the state (delib.).* ⁵ *persuadeo.* ⁶ *ita otio et concordiae consulendum ut mors Caesaris oblivione deleatur.* ⁷ *beneficia accipere* ⁸ use *dubito.*

EXERCISE 52.

The disorder that happened at the funeral was the effect of treachery (*adj.*), the work of a mercenary rabble, for the greater part slaves and strangers, listed and prepared for violence against a party unarmed, pursuing pacific counsels, and placing all their trust and security in the justice of their cause¹. Cicero calls it a conspiracy of Caesar's freedmen, and they no doubt were the chief managers of the tumult. The Jews, too, seem to have borne a considerable part in it, who, out of hatred to Pompey for his affront² to their city and temple, were zealously attached³ to Caesar, and, above all other foreigners in Rome, distinguished themselves⁴ by the expression of their grief for his death, so that they spent whole nights at his monument⁶ in a kind of religious devotion to his memory⁷.

¹ two nouns. ² *violator.* ³ *studiosus.* ⁴ *oculos omnium trahere.* ⁵ *lamentationes.* ⁶ *bustum.* ⁷ *quasi sacris operati.*

EXERCISE 53.

Some of Caesar's friends, particularly Pansa and Hirtius, advised him always to keep a standing guard of troops for the defence of his person; alleging¹ that a power acquired by arms must necessarily be maintained by arms. But his invariable² answer was, that he had rather die once by treachery³ than live always in fear of it. He used to laugh at Sulla, for restoring the liberty of the Republic, and to say, in contempt of him, that as a statesman he did not know his letters⁴. But, as a judicious writer has observed, Sulla had learnt the elements of statesmanship better than he, which taught him to resign his guards and his government⁵ together;

whereas Caesar, by dismissing the one, yet retaining the other, had committed a dangerous solecism in politics; for he[6] strengthened the popular odium, and consequently his own danger, while he weakened his defence.

[1] *indic. narr.* [2] *semper.* [3] *insidiæ.* [4] *elementa.* [5] *potentia.* [6] say: *did something of unusual and dangerous.* [6] *quippe qui.*

VOCABULARY TO PART II

A.

a, usually not expressed; **a certain**, quidam; **a city which . . .** ea urbs quae. . . .

abdicate, I, me magistratu abdico.

ability, ingenium; **to the best of · my a.**, use quam possum.

able, poten-s, -tis; peritus.

able, I am, possum.

abound, I, affluo.

about (*of place*), circum (prep. with acc.); (=concerning, de, prep. with abl.).

abroad, peregre.

absence (in my), me absente.

absent, I am, absum.

abstain from, abstineo.

abstinence, abstinentia.

abundant variety, say *plenty* (copia) *and variety*.

accept, accipio.

acceptable to, gratus.

accident, cas-us, us; or use accido.

accomplish, I, efficio.

accordingly, itaque.

account of, on, propter (prep. with acc.).

account, I take into, (or **take a. of**), rationem habeo.

account-book, tabula, ae.

accuse, I, accuso (r. i.).

accused, reus.

accustomed, I am, soleo.

acknowledge. See *admit*.

acquire, I, adipiscor.

acquit, absolvo.

acre, iugerum.

across, trans (with acc.).

act, factum.

act, I, ago.

action, use vb.; **by a.**, agendo.

active, strenuus.

activity, use strenuus.

added, to this is, huc accedit (ut).

adherent, use *suus*.

administer, I, guberno.

administration, res publica.

admiration, use miror; **without a.**, use quin with vb.

admire, I, admiror.

admit, I, confiteor; (let in) admitto.

admittance, use admitto.

adopt, a policy, consilium capere.

adopt, I, utor.

advance (go forward), I, procedo, progredior; **I advance my friends to office**, amicos meos ad honores promoveo.

advantage, is of, prosum.

adversity, res adversae.

advice, consili-um, -i.

advise, I, moneo.

Aedui, Aedu-i, -orum.

Aesop, Aesop-us, -i.

afar, procul.

affair, res, rei; **affairs**, res, or res gestae.

affront, res.

afraid, I am, timeo (r. 2).

after, post (prep. with acc.); postquam, cum, abl. abs.

afterwards, postea.

again, iterum (*a second time*); rursus.

again and again, saepissime.

against, contra (prep. with acc.). **against my will**, me invito.

against, I offend, violo.

Agamemnon, Agamemnon, -onis.

agent, expressed by an indirect question+quis.

ago, abhinc (before expressions of time and with acc. or abl.); *ten years ago*, abhinc decem annos (or annis).

agreeably, convenienter (with dat.).

agreed, it is, constat; convenit; *all are agreed*, inter omnes constat.

agreement, consensi-o, -onis.

aid, auxili-um, -i.

aid, I, auxilio sum (with dat.); subvenio.

Alexander, Alexand-er, -ri.

alien, alienus.

alike, pariter.

alive, vivus; *be a.*, vivo.

all, omnis, totus.

allege, I, dictito.

allied, socius.

allow, sino.

allowed, I am, mihi licet.

ally, soci-us, -i.

almost, fere, paene.

alone, solus.

Alps, Alp-es, -ium, F.

already, iam.

also, quoque, idem.

altar, ar-a, -ae.

alter, muto.

altogether, omnino.

always, semper.

amass, I, comparo.

ambassador, legatus.

among, inter (prep. with acc.); in (prep. with abl.).

ancestors, maior-es, -um.

ancient, (belonging to old time), antiquus; (full of years) vetustus.

and, et, -que (written after), atque (ac, before consonants only).

anger, ira, iracundia.

angry, iratus.

angry with, I am, irascor.

animal, anim-al, -alis, N.

announce, nuntio (r. i).

announcement, expressed by the perf. part.: *the announcement of the defeat*, clades nuntiata.

annoyed, I am, me piget.

another, alter (of two); alius, -a, -ud (of more than two).

answer, responsum.

answer, I, respondeo; *I make the same answer*, idem respondeo; *he makes no answer*, nihil respondet.

anxiety, sollicitudo.

anxious, sollicitus.

anxious, I am, cupio.

any, quis; (with negative) quisquam or ullus.

any longer, ultra; diutius.

anywhere, usquam.

Apollo, Apoll-o, -inis.

apparent, it is, manifestum est; apparet.

apparently, use *seem*.

appear, use excito.

appear, I, videor.

appearance, species.

applaud, I, plaudo.

application, studi-um, -i; *application to literature*, studium litterarum.

appoint, creo.

approach, adventus.

approach, I, advenio.

approval, use vb.

approve, probo (r. i.).

April, April-is, -e. (adj.).

architect, faber, bri.

argument, urge, use dico.

arise, I, consurgo.

arm, humerus; vb., armo (r. i.).

arms, arma, -orum.

army, exercit-us, -us.

arrest, I, arripio.

arrival, advent-us, -us.

arrive, I, pervenio, advenio.

arrow, sagitt-a, -ae.

art, ar-s, -tis, F.

as (correlative of same), qui; corr. of *such*, qualis; of *great*, quantus; use dat. (= for).

as soon as, postquam.

as yet, adhuc.

ascend, eo.

ascertain, I, cognosco.

ashamed, I am, me pudet; *I am ashamed of you,* tui me pudet.

ask (or **ask for**) **I,** rogo.

asleep, use dormio.

assassination, expressed by perf. part. pass.; *after Cæsar's assassination,* post Caesarem interfectum.

assault, use immitto (*send against*).

assemble, I (trans.), convoco; (intr.), convenio.

assent, lend a blind, temere assentior.

assert, I, dico.

assertion, make, dico.

assign, I, tribuo.

assist, assistance. See **aid.**

assume, sumo.

astonishing, admirabilis.

at, ad.

at once, statim.

Athens, Athen-ae, -arum.

attack, impet-us, -us.

attack, I, aggredior.

attain, attineo (ad.).

attempt, conat-us, -us.

attempt, I, conor (r. i.).

attention, animadversio.

attract, traho.

audacity, audacia.

audience, use audio.

augur, augur.

August, August-us, -a, -um.

authority, auctorit-as, -atis.

avail, oneself of, utor.

avenge, I, ulciscor.

avenue, adit-us, -us.

avoid, I, vito (r. i.).

away, I am, absum.

away, I go, abeo.

B.

back, terg-um, -i.

backwards, retro.

bad, malus.

baggage, impedimenta.

banish, I, pello.

banished, extorris (ex, terra), with abl.

banishment, exili-um, -i; **I am in banishment,** exulo.

banker, argentarius.

barbarian, barbarus.

bark, latro (r. i.); (noun) cortex, icis.

base, turpis.

battle, pugna, proelium; **in battle,** in acie; **there has been a disastrous b.,** infeliciter pugnatum est.

be, sum.

bear, I, fero.

beast, fera, belua,

beat, use vinco.

beautiful, pulcher; (**of places**), amoenus.

beauty, pulchritud-o, -inis.

because, quod, quia.

become, I, fio.

before, ante; **ten years before,** decem annos ante.

before, antequam, priusquam.

beg, I, oro; **I beg you not,** te oro ne.

begin, I, incipio; coepi, -isse;
at the beginning of spring,
primo vere.

beginning, initium.

behave, I, me gero.

belief, use vb.

believe, I, credo; **I am be-
lieved,** mihi cred tur.

believing, by, credendo.

belong to, p. 56, 2; see *have*.

below, infra.

benefit, commodum.

benefit, I, prosum.

bereft, orbus.

beseech, oro.

besiege, I, obsideo.

best, optimus.

betray, I, prodo.

between, inter.

bewail, deploro (r. i.).

bind, iungo, vincio.

bird, avis, -is, F.

birth, of noble, nobili loco
natus.

bite, mors-us, -us.

blame, culpa.

blame, I, culpo, vitupero (r. i.)

blessing, bonum.

blind, caecus; **blinding,**
omit, as being implied.

blindness, caecitas.

blockade, obsideo.

blood, sanguis, M.; (when
shed), cruor.

blossom, effloresco.

blush to do it, I, me pudet
hoc facere.

boast, I, glorior; **I make the
same boast,** idem glorior.

boat, navigium; linter, tris.

body, corpus, N.; **a great body
of men,** magna vis hominum.

bold, audax.

boldly, audacter or aud-
aciter.

bond, use neut. pron.

book, lib-er, -ri, M.

booty, praeda.

borders, fin-es, -ium, M. (pl.).

born, I am, nascor.

born to rule, natus ad regen-
dum.

borrow money, pecuniam
mutuam accipere or sumere.

both, uterque; ambo, -ae, -o.
both . . . and, et . . . et; -que
. . . -que; vel . . . vel.

bottom, fundus, -i; imus;
**at the bottom of the moun-
tain,** in monte imo.

boy, pu-er, -eri; **from a
boy (from boyhood),** a puero.

boyhood, pueritia.

brave, fortis.

bravely, fortiter.

bread, panis.

break, I, frango; **I break a
law,** legem violo; **I break my
word,** fidem fallo.

breast, pectus, -oris N.

bridge, pon-s, -tis, M.; **I
build a bridge over a river,**
pontem in flumine facio.

brief, brev-is, -e.

brigand, latr-o, onis.

bring, I, fero, duco; **I bring
help to you,** tibi auxilio venio
(dat.).

Britain, Britanni-a, -ae.

broad, latus.

brother, frat-er, -ris.

build, I, aedifico (r. i.).

burden, on-us, -eris, N.

burn, I, incendo.

bury, sepelio.

business, res, negotium; use
m um.

but, sed, verum.

butcher, I, trucido.

buy, I, emo.

by (of agent), a, before a con-
sonant; ab, before a vowel or h;
abs, before te; (of secondary
agent) per, with acc.; **by land
and sea,** terra marique.

bystander, use adsto.

C.

call (summon), I, voco.
call (name), I, appello.
call down, I, devoco.
call out, evoco; (exclaim), I, exclamo.
call together, cogo, convoco.
camp, castr-a, -orum.
can, possum.
cannot, non possum.
candidate for, I am, peto.
capable of command, imperii capa-x, -acis.
captive, captiv-us, i.
capture, capio; on the capture of the city, urbe capta.
care, cura; care for, curo.
care, take, cave ut; take care that . . . not, cave ne.
care, without, securus.
carry, I, porto.
carry away and drown, absumo.
carry on war, I, bellum gero.
carry up, educo.
Carthage, Carthag-o, -inis,
Carthaginian, Carthaginiens-is, -e.
case, in our, in nobis; in case, si.
case that, it is the, fit ut.
cast, I, iacio.
cast (of a spear), iact-us, us.
Catiline, Catilin-a, -ae.
Cato, Cat-o, -onis.
cause, causa; efficio.
cause (loss), I, infero.
cause a panic, I, pavorem inicio.
cautious, cautus.
cavalry, equitat-us, us,; equites.
cease, I, desino, desisto.
celebrated, ille; praeclarus.
centre, medius; in the centre of the city, media urbe.

centurion, centuri-o, -onis.
certain (sure), cert-us, -a, -um; it is certain, certum est; certain victory, victoria explorata; as certain, pro certo.
certain, quidam.
chance, casus.
change, I, muto; a change, res.
character, (natural) ingenium, mores; often expressed by a dependent question: I know the character of the man, scio qualis homo sit.
charge (attack), impetus.
charge, crimen; (accuse), I, accuso, I am charged with, in crimen venio: I am charged with treason, in crimen proditionis venio.
Charybdis, Charybd-is, -is.
cheap, vilis.
cheat, I, circumvenio.
check, I keep in, moderor.
child, pu-er, -eri.
children, liber-i, -orum.
Cicero, Cicer-o, -onis.
circumstance, res, rei, F.; under these circumstances, quae cum ita sint; I yield to circumstances, tempori cedo.
citadel, ar-x, -cis, F.
citizen, civ-is, -is.
citizenship, civit-as, -atis, F.
city, urb-s, -is, F.
clamor, clam-or, -oris, M.
class, genus hominum; classis.
clear, clarus; purgo (r. i.).
clear, it is, manifestum est; apparet, -ere, -uit.
clear (it is) or light, lucet.
clemency, clementi-a, -ae.
clever, callidus.
cimate, loca.
climb, scando.
cloak, pallium.
close, claudo.

closed to truth, ears, aures
ad veritatem clausae.

closely unites, say *join and
bind together* (connecto).

clothe, vestio.

cold, frigus; frigidus.

colleague, colleg-a, -ae.

collect, I, colligo, cogo.

Colline gate, porta Collina.

colony, coloni-a, -ae.

come, venio.

command, I, iubeo; **I com-
mand an army,** exercitui prae-
sum, impero.

commend, laudo (r. i.).

commerce, mercatur-a, -ae.

commit (a crime), I, ad-
mitto.

common, use *all*.

companion, use *vivo*.

compare, I, confero.

compassion, misericordia.

compel, I, cogo.

competitor, use decerto.

complain, I, queror, queri,
questus sum (de); **to my com-
plaint he answered nothing,**
nihil mihi querenti respondit.

compose, condo.

compulsion, use cogo.

conceal, I, celo.

concerning, de (prep., with
abl.).

concerns me, it, meā refert.

conclude, a speech, say *make
an end of speaking.*

condemn, I, condemno.

condemnation, escape, say
nor was he not condemned.

condition, stat-us, -us.

conduct (a government), I,
guberno (rem p.); **conduct my-
self well, I,** me bene gero.

conduct, facta.

confess, confiteor.

confer, I, defero.

confidence, fiduci-a, -ae; or
use confido.

confusion, throw into, use
turbo.

**congratulate, congratulat-
ion,** use gratulor (d.).

conquer, I, vinco.

conscious, conscius, a, um.

consent, consensus, -us.

consequence, event-us, -us,
M.; **a matter of the greatest
consequence,** res gravissima;
**it is of great consequence to
me,** meā multum interest.

consider, considero (r. i.),
specto; aestimo, habeo.

consistent with, etc., say
*the man who is very brave we wish
to be,* etc.

consolation, solatium.

**conspire (make a conspir-
acy), I,** coniurationem facio

constant occurrence, of,
say *happens more often.*

constitutional, e re publica.

consul, consul, -is.

consulship, consulat-us, -us.

consult, I, consulo. **I con-
sult you,** te consulo; **I con-
sult your interest,** tibi consulo.

contain, I, contineo.

contemn, I, contemno.

contemporary, aequalis, -is.

contend, contendo.

content, contentus.

contest, certam-en, -inis, N.

contract, I, contraho.

contract, I let out a, loco;
I take a contract, conduco.

control (noun), use penes.

control myself, I, mihi
moderor.

convince, persuadeo.

Corinth, Corinthus, -i, F.

corn, frument-um, -i.

corrupt, corrumpo.

costs, it, constat, -are, -stitit;
it costs much, magni constat;

it costs too much, nimio constat.

cottage, casa, ae.
council, concili-um, -i.
count, I, enumero.
country, (one's native), patri-a, ae; (the state), civit-as, -atis, F.; res publica; (territory), fines; (as opposed to the town), rus, ruris, N.; in the country, ruri.
country-house, villa, ae.
countrymen, civ-es, -ium.
courage, virtus.
course, cursus; res, or use neut. pron.
court, iudicium, -i.
cover, I, tego.
coward, cowardly, ignavus.
create, creo.
credit, laus, -dis, F.; fides.
Cretan, Cretensis, -e.
crime, facin-us, -oris, N.; scelus, eris.
criticise, reprehendo.
crooked (bent), curvus, a, um; (of counsels), pravus.
cross, I, transeo.
crown, coron-a, -ae; often translated by regnum, -i.
cruel, crudelis, saevus.
cruelty, crudelit-as, -atis, F.
crush, opprimo.
cure, sano (r. i.).
current, flumen.
custom, mos, moris, M.
cut down, say kill.

D.

dagger, sica.
daily, cotidie.
damp, use prae with abl.
danger, pericul-um, -i.
dangerous, periculosus.
dare, I, audeo.

daring, aud-ax, -acis; he acted with more daring than discretion, audacius quam prudentius egit.
daringly, audacter.
dart, iaculum.
date, I know the date of the event, scio quando acciderit; at an early date, mature, brevi.
daughter, filia.
dawn, prima lux; at dawn, prima luce; dawn, nearer to, etc., say the nearer they were away from the rising (ortus) of things, the better they saw, etc.
day, dies; day before, pridie; of the day before, hesternus.
daylight, lux, -cis, F.
dead, mortuus.
deaf, surdus.
deaf ear, turn, etc., say let us not obey (obtempero) those dissuading (dissuadeo).
dear, carus.
death, mors.
debt, aes alienum (literally another's money).
deceive, I, decipio.
December, Decemb-er, -ris.
decide, I, statuo (with inf. or ut with subj.); p. 92, 5.
decision, arbitrium.
declaration, use declare.
declare, dico; declaro; indico.
decline, detrecto.
decrease, minuo.
decree, I, decerno.
decree, a, decret-um, -i.
deed, fact-um, -i.
deep, altus; deep grief, dolor gravis.
defeat, clad-es, -is, F.; (vb.), vinco.
defend, I, defendo.
defender, defens-or, -oris.
defer, differo.
defile, angusti-ae, -arum.

delay, I, moror, cunctor (r. 1).

delay, without, confestim.

deliberately, consulto.

delight, delecto (trans.).

delightful, iucundus.

deliver a speech, I, orationem habeo.

deliver (entrust), I, mando.

demand, postulo; **I demand this from you,** hoc tibi impero.

deny, I, nego.

depart, I, abeo, discedo, proficiscor.

departure, profectio; or use proficiscor.

deploy, explico (r. 1).

descend, descendo.

desert, I, desero.

desert, merit-um, -i; **in accordance with my deserts,** pro meis meritis.

deserter, transfug-a, -ae, M.

deserve, I, mereor (of, de.).

design. See **plan.**

desire, cupido, -inis, F.

desire, I, cupio (r. 3.).

desirous, see above.

desist, I, desisto.

despair, I, despero.

despair, desperatio, -onis, F.

despise, I, contemno.

destination, say *where we are going.*

destiny, fat-um, -i.

destitute of, exper-s, -tis.

destroy, I, deleo. See **break.**

destruction, exitium.

detain, I, retineo.

detect, sentio.

deter, I, prohibeo.

determine, I. See **decide.**

detest, odi.

detestable, atrox.

detestation, loudly-expressed, say *hate* (pl.) *and shouts.*

devastate, I, vasto.

development, late, say *springs up late among men.*

Diana, Diana, ae.

dictator, dictator.

devotedly, say *very much.*

die, I, morior.

differ, differo.

difference to us, it makes no, nihil nostrā interest.

differently, aliter, p. 129, 1.

difficult, difficil-is, -e.

difficulty, use adj.; **without difficulty,** facile.

dignity, dignitas or use gravis.

direct, I, administro.

direction, I know the direction the enemy have taken, scio quo hostes iverint.

disadvantage, incommodum.

disagreeable, molestus.

disagreement, dissensio.

disappoint, eludo.

disaster, clad-es, -is, F.

disband, I, dimitto.

discontented, non contentus.

discord, use dissonus.

discover, I (find out), cognosco.

discretion, prudentia; or use adj.

disease, morb-us, -i.

disgrace, dedec-us, -oris, N.; **it is a disgrace to you,** tibi dedecori est.

disgusted, I am, me taedet.

dismiss, I, dimitto.

displease, I, displiceo.

displeasure, use vb.; offensio.

dissatisfied with, I am, me taedet.

dissent, dissentio (vb.).

distinction, honor.

distinguished, clarus.

distress, dolor, oris, M.; or use me piget.

distribute, I, divido.

district, ager, agri.

distrust, diffido (dat.).

disturb, I, perturbo.

ditch, fossa, ae.

divide, I, divido.

divine, divinus.

do, I, facio; ago (pursue a course of action); **do not,** p. 80, 2.

doctor, medic-us, i.

doctrine, use neut. pron.

dog, can-is, -is, M.

door, osti-um, -i.

doubt, I (=I am in doubt), dubito; **there is no doubt that,** non dubium est quin with subj.).

draw (=drag), **I,** traho, elicio; **I draw up a law,** legem scribo; **I draw up soldiers,** milites instruo.

dream, somni-um, -i.

dream, I, somnio (r i.).

dress, vest-is, -is, F.

drink, I, bibo.

drive, I, ago, pello.

drops, it, rorat (-are).

drowned, was, say *could not be heard for* (prae, with abl.).

dry (vb.), aresco.

during, acc. of time how long; inter or intra with acc.

duty, a, munus, officium; **it is my duty,** debeo.

duty of, it is, use genitive.

dwell, I, habito.

dwelling, domicili-um, -i.

E.

each, quisque.

eager for, cupidus, (with gen.).

eager to, I am, cupio.

eagle, aquila.

ear, aur-is, -is, F.

early, maturus; **in early spring,** primo vere.

early, mature.

earn, I, mereo.

earth, tell-us, -uris, F.; terra.

ease, with, facile.

easily, facile.

easy, facilis.

eat, I, edo.

effect, perficio.

effort, labor.

either -or, aut . . . aut; vel . . . vel.

eject, I, eicio.

elect, I, creo, facio; **I am elected consul,** consul fio.

eloquent, eloquens.

else, alius.

elude, frustror.

empire, imperi-um, -i.

employ thought, in guessing, cogito (r. 1).

encamp, I, consido; castra loco.

encounter, I (meet), obviam ire (dat.).

encourage, I, adhortor.

encroach on, &c., say *take away from each his own.*

end, finis; **at the end of winter,** extrema hieme; (vb.), finio.

endeavor, I, conor.

endeavor, an, conatus.

endowed, praeditus.

endure, I, tolero, perpetior, -peti, -pessus sum.

enemy (public), host-is, -is; **(private),** inimicus, i.

engagement, an, proelium.

English, the, Angl-i, -orum.

enjoy, I, fru-or, -i, -ctus sum.

enough, satis (adv.); **enough money,** satis pecuniae.

enter, I, ingredior, -gredi, -gressus sum; **I enter the house,** domum ingredior.

entrust, mando; trado.

enumerate, I, enumero.

envied, I am, mihi invidetur.

envoy, legatus.

envy, I, invideo.

16—

envy, invidi-a, -ae.

err, I, erro.

error, error.

escape, effugio; fuga.

estate, fundus, praedium.

esteem, I, magni aestimo.

estimate, I, aestimo.

estranged, alienus.

eternal, sempiternus.

even, etiam; before an adj., **vel; not even,** ne . . . quidem (with the emphatic word between); **not even one,** ne unus quidem.

even (level), aequus.

evening, vesper; gen. vesperis or vesperi.

events, at all, certe.

ever (always), semper; (at any time), unquam.

every (= all), omnes; **everything,** omnia; **every day;** see **daily; every one,** omnes.

everybody, omnes.

evident, it is, manifestum est.

evil, mal-um, -i.

exactly, ipse; **exactly ten days ago,** abhinc decem ipsis diebus.

examine (ground), I, exploro.

exasperate, I, incendo.

exasperation, use saevio; say *in proportion as they proceed saevo more gently deniter, will they be condi.*

excel, I, praesto (with dat.).

excellent, optimus; **your excellent father,** pater tuus, vir optimus.

exchange, I, muto.

excite, excito.

exclaim, I, exclamo.

excogitate, I, commentor

exempt, immunis; **exempt from care,** securus.

exempt, (vb.) solvo.

exhort, I, hortor.

exhortation, adhortatio, F.

exile, an, exul, -is.

exile, state of, exili-um, -i; **I am driven into exile,** in exilium pellor; **I am in exile,** exulo.

exist, I, sum.

existence of God, I believe in the, deum esse credo.

expect, I, exspecto; credo.

expedient, it is, expedit.

expedition, bellum.

expel, I, exigo; **after the expulsion of the kings,** post reges exactos.

experience, experientia; **a man of experience,** homo peritus rerum; **experience of life,** rerum peritia.

experienced, (rerum) peritus.

experiment, experimentum.

explain, expono.

exploit, res.

expulsion. See **expel.**

extend, pateo.

extent, translated by dependent question: **I don't know the extent of the damage,** nescio quantum sit detrimentum.

extortion, res repetundae.

eye, oculus; **with my own eyes,** ipse.

F.

face, vult-us, -us; os, oris

facility, facilitas.

fact, a, res, rei; p. 96, 1.

faction, facti-o, -onis, F.

fail, desum (d).

faith, fid-es, -ei, F.; **I put faith in you,** tibi fidem habeo.

faithful, fidelis.

fall, I, cado; **I fall in battle,** pereo; **I fall into,** incido; **I fall headlong,** praecipito.

false, falsus.

falsehood, mendacium; **tell a falsehood,** mentior (r. 4).

falsely, falso.

family, famili-a, -ae; **born of a noble family,** loco honesto ortus.

famous, praeclarus, insignis.

fancy, I, puto; credo.

far or far away, procul; **as far as,** quantum.

far (by), multo; **far better,** multo melior.

far, **so far from,** tantum abest ut.

farther, ultra.

fatal, funestus.

father, pat-er, -ris.

farewell, bid f. to, saluto.

fault, a, culpa.

fault, **I commit,** pecco.

favor (kindness), benefici-um, -i.

favor, I, faveo.

favorable, idoneus.

fear, timor, oris; **for fear that,** ne.

fear, I, timeo.

fearful, timidus.

fee, merc-es, -edis; **I teach at a small fee,** parvi doceo.

feed on, I, vescor, vesci.

feel, sentio; **I feel sorrow,** doleo, -ere; me paenitet; **I feel pity,** me miseret; **I feel shame,** me pudet.

feelings, animus.

fellow, homo.

fellow-citizen, civis.

fever, febr-is, -is, F.

few, pauci; **very few,** perpauci.

fickleness, levis animus; or use levis.

fiction, use fingo; res ficta.

fidelity, fid-es, -ei, F.

field, a, ag-er, -ri.

field of battle, aci-es, ei, F.; **on the field of battle,** in acie.

fifteen, quindecim.

fight, I, pugno; **fight a battle,** proelium committo.

figure, forma.

fill with, I, compleo.

find, reperio; **find out,** cognosco.

fine, multa, ae.

fine, pulcher.

finish, conficio.

fire, ignis; **set on fire,** incendo.

firmness, use constans.

first, primus; **I was the first to do it,** primus hoc feci; **at first,** primo; **in the first place,** primum; **the first of January,** Kalendae Ianuariae.

fit, aptus.

fitted, aptus; **fitted for,** aptus ad.

five, quinque.

five hundred, quingenti.

flag, sign-um, -i.

flank, lat-us, -eris, N.

flat, planus.

flatter, assentor (d.).

flee, I, fugio; **I flee from him,** eum fugio.

fleet, a, class-is, -is, F.

flesh, caro, carnis.

flight, fuga.

fling at, conicio (in.).

fling away, abicio.

flock together, convolo.

flourish, I, floreo.

flow, I, fluo.

flower, flos, floris, M.

fly, I, volo. See **flee.**

foe (public), hostis, -is; (private), inimicus, -i.

follow, I, sequor.

folly, stultiti-a, ae; or use adj.

fond, be, amo.

food, vict-us, -us.

fool, stultus.

foolish, stultus.

foot, pes, pedis, M.; **foot of a mountain,** mons imus.

foot, set, pedem ponere (in).

foot-soldier, ped-es, -itis.

footstep, vestigium, -i.

for (of time), acc.; **(enough)**

for, (satis) ad; dat.

for (on behalf of), pro (prep. with abl.).

for my own part, ego, equidem.

for some time, iamdudum.

forbid, I, veto.

force, vis.

forces (troops), copiae.

forefathers, maiores.

foreign, exterus; ad exteras nationes.

foremost, primus.

foresee, I, prospicio.

foresight, use prudens.

forest, silva.

foretell, I, praedico.

forget, I, obliviscor.

forgive, I, ignosco; **I forgive you this deed,** tibi huius facti veniam do or hoc factum tibi condono.

form (shape), form-a, -ae.

form a line of battle, I, aciem instruo.

form a plan, I, consilium capio, consilium ineo.

form a partnership with him, I, societatem cum eo ineo.

former, pristinus; **the former —the latter,** ille—hic.

fort, arx, castellum.

fortify, munio.

fortress, arx.

fortunate, felix; **it was very fortunate that,** peropportune accidit ut.

fortune, fortun-a, -ae.

fortune (good), felicitas.

found, condo.

foundation, use vb.

four, quattuor.

France, use Gallia or Galli.

free, liber; (from) vacuus.

free from care, securus.

free (give freedom to), I, libero.

freed from, I am, liberor(r.i.).

freedom, libert-as, atis, F.; or use adj.

fresh, recen-s, -tis.

friend, amic-us, -i; **a very intimate friend,** homo amicissimus.

friendly, amic-us, -a, -um.

friendship, amicitia, ae.

frivolous character, use levis.

from, a (before consonants), ab (before vowels and consonants); e, ex (with abl.).

front, in, a fronte.

full, plenus. See **utmost.**

future, the, futur-a, -orum; **in future,** in futurum, in posterum.

G.

gain, lucrum; **for a source of gain,** quaestui.

gain, consequor. **gain glory, I,** gloriam pario; **gain victory,** vinco or victoriam consequi.

gallant Crassus, the, Crassus, vir fortissimus.

games, lud-i, -orum.

garden, hort-us, -i.

gate, port-a, -ae.

gather, colligo.

gather together, I, convoco, cogo; (intr.), convenio.

Gaul, Galli-a, -ae.

Gauls, Galli, -orum.

general, imperat-or, -oris; dux.

general, as a g. thing, vulgo.

generation, aet-as, -atis, F.

generous, benignus.

genius, ingenium; or use in-geniosus.

gentle, mit-is, -e.

gentlemen of the jury, iudices.

gift, don-um, -i.

give, I, do, dono.

give (back or **up), I,** reddo.

glad, I am, gaudeo.

gladly, libenter; often rendered by the adj.: **he came gladly,** laetus venit.

glorious, clarus; **he won a glorious victory,** egregie vicit.

glory, gloria, laus.

glow, exardesco.

go, I, eo.

go away, I, abeo; **I go forward** or **forth,** progredior; **I go down to meet,** obviam (with dat.) descendo; **I go on,** pergo; **I go out,** excedo.

goad, stimulo.

goal, have a g. in view, use aliquid agere or spectare (*be driving at* or *looking at something.*)

God, de-us, dei.

goddess, dea.

gold, aur-um, -i.

gold, of, = **golden.**

golden, aureus; or use tantus.

good, bonus.

good-bye, say to, saluto.

goodness, probit-as, atis.

goodness of character, say *goodness and character.*

goods, bona.

good-will, benevolentia.

govern, rego; **I govern the state,** rem publicam guberno; **govern one's feelings,** animo moderor.

government, the, qui rei publicae praesunt; res publica.

gradually, (*step by step*), gra-datim; (*little by little*), paulatim

grant, I, do, concedo.

grateful be, gratiam habeo.

gratitude, gratia, -ae; **I show gratitude,** gratiam refero; **I feel gratitude,** gratiam habeo; **express gratitude,** gratias agere.

great, magnus; p. 78, 10.

greatly, magnopere.

Greece, Graeci-a, ae.

Greek, know, Graece scire.

Greeks, Graec-i, -orum.

green, viridis, -e.

grieve, am grieved, doleo, me piget.

groan, ingemo.

ground, (soil), solum, -i; **(pleasure grounds),** horti.

guard, I, custodio; **I am on my guard against you,** te caveo; **stand guard,** in vigilia maneo.

guard, guardian, cust-os, -odis.

guest, a, hosp-es, -itis.

guide, dux, ducis.

guile, dol-us, -i.

H.

had, p. 84, 7.

hair, capill-us, -i.

half, dimidium, -i.

hand, a, man-us, -us, F.

hand, I am at, adsum.

hand, hand over, I, trado.

handful, pauci.

handiwork, say *by hand and work.*

Hannibal, Hannib-al, -alis.

happen, accidere.

happens that, it, accidit.

happily, beate.

happiness, beata vita.

happy, beatus.

harbor, port-us, -us.

hard, difficil-is, -e; **hard to say,** difficile dictu.

hardly, vix.

hardship, labor, oris, M.; res adversae.

harm, do harm, noceo.

harmless, innocuus.

harry, I, vexo.

harvest, messis, -is, F.

haste, there is need of, opus est properato.

hasten, I, propero, contendo.

hate, I, odi, odisse; **I am hated,** ego odio (dat.) sum.

hated, invisus.

hatred, odium, -i.

have (possess), habeo; *often rendered by* esse *with dat.*

he, is, ille, hic.

heal, medeor, -eri (dat.).

health, be in good, valeo.

heap, vis, F.; vb., infero.

hear, I, audio.

hearing, by, audiendo.

heart (literal), cor, cordis, N.; (spirit), animus, i; **I take it to heart,** id graviter (or aegre) fero.

hearth, foc-us, -i.

heaven (sky), caelum, -i; often rendered by di immortales.

heavy, gravis.

height, altitud-o, -inis, F.; or use altus.

height of folly, to such a, eo stultitiae.

heir, her-es, -edis.

help, I, subvenio (with dat.); **I help you,** tibi auxilio sum; **I can not help sending,** facere non possum quin mittam.

hence, inde.

herb, herba, -ae.

here, hic, huc.

hero (mythical), hero-s, -is; *usually expressed by* ille *or* vir fortissimus.

hesitate, I, dubito.

hide, I, celo, abdo.

high, altus; **the highest offices,** honores amplissimi.

highly, p. 60, 5.

high-spirited, ferox.

hill, coll-is, -is, M.

himself, (reflexive), sui; (emphatic), ipse.

hinder, I, prohibeo.

hindrance, impedimentum; **it is a great hindrance to me,** mihi impedimento (dat.) magno est.

his, suus; eius, illius; **his own book,** suus ipsius liber.

historian, rerum scriptor.

history, res gestae; **matter of,** say *it is handed down to memory.*

hitherto, adhuc.

hold (possess), I, habeo, obtineo.

hold (think), I, duco, habeo; **I hold him an enemy,** eum pro hoste habeo.

hollow, cavo (r. i).

homage, etc., say *I promised that I would help him with my authority.*

home, at, domi; **from home** domo; **home,** after words expressing motion, domum.

Homer, Homērus.

homicide, guilty of, use hominem interficio.

honest, probus.

honesty, probit-as, -atis, F.; **with honesty,** probe or summa probitate.

honor (good faith), fides, -ei; (distinction), hon-or, -oris, M.

honorable, honestus.

hope, I, spero; (noun), spes.

horse, equ-us, -i.

horseman, equ-es, -itis.

horrible to say, nefas est dictu.

hostage, ob-ses, -sidis, M.

hostile, hostilis, -e.

hot, calidus.

hot, I am, caleo.

hour, hor-a, -ae.

house, domus, -us, F.; at my house, domi meae, apud me.

House, senatus.

how, qui, quemadmodum, quoniodo, quam.

how great, quantus; **how long,** quam diu; **how many,** quot; **how much,** quantum; **how often,** quoties.

human, humanus.

hundred, centum.

hunger, fames, is, F.

hurry, I, propero.

hurt, I, noceo; offendo.

hustings, rostr-a, -orum.

I.

I, ego.

ice, glacies, -ei, F.

idea, opini-o, -onis, F.

identical, idem.

Ides, Id-us, -uum, F.

idle, vanus.

idleness, ignavi-a, ae.

if, si.

if not, nisi, si non.

ignominious, turpis.

ignorance, use ignoro.

ignorant, ignarus; or use ignoro.

ill, aeger, -ra, -rum.

ill-luck, fortuna.

illustrate, I, illustro.

illustrious, praeclarus.

image, imag-o, -inis, F.

imagine, puto.

imitate, imitor (r. i.).

immediately, statim; **immediately after the battle,** confestim a proelio.

immoderate, immoderatus.

immortal, immortalis, -e.

immortality, immortalitas.

impediment, use aliquid.

impel, impello.

impend, immineo.

impiety, impiet-as, -atis, F.

impious, impius.

implore. See **beg.**

importance to me, it is of, mea interest or retert.

improve, emendo (r. i.).

imprudent, imprudens.

impudence, impudentia.

in, in (with abl.).

inasmuch as, cum, quippe.

incendiarism, political, incendium.

inconsistent with, etc., say *such a man cannot be fearful or anxious.*

increase, augeo (trans.); cresco.

indeed, profecto.

induce, I, persuadeo.

infant, infan-s, -tis.

infantry, pedites.

influence, auctorit-as, -atis.

influence, to, moveo.

influential with me, he is very, apud me multum valet.

inform, certiorem facere.

information, use vb.

ingratitude, use immemor beneficii.

injure. See **hurt.**

innocent, innocen-s, -tis.

inquire, quaero.

inquiry, quaesti-o, -onis; or use gerund.

instead of, pro; **instead of doing this he did that,** cum hoc facere deberet, illud fecit.

instigation, at my, me auctore.

instrumentality, through the instrumentality of, per

insult, contumelia, -ae.

insuperable, insuperabilis.

intelligently, use prudentia.

intend, I, in animo mihi est; often expressed by fut. part.

intensity, of such, tantus.

intention, vb.

intercept, I, intercipio.

interest of the state, it is, rei publicae interest; **I consult your interests,** tibi consulo.

interfere, obsto.

interference, use vb.

intervene, I, intervenio.

interview with one, I have, aliquem convenio.

into, in (with acc.).

introduction, use introduco.

invading host, use hostes.

invent, fingo.

inventor, invent-or, -oris.

invest (money), colloco.

investigation, use quaero cur.

iota, add, say *make you more,* etc.

Irishman, Hibernicus.

island, insul-a, -ae.

issue, event-us, -us; or use *happen.*

it. See **he.**

Italy, Italia, -ae.

itself, ipse.

J.

January, Ianuari-us, -a, -um

javelin, iaculum.

join, I, iungo; **I join you,** me tibi adiungo.

join battle, proelium committere.

journey, iter, itineris, N.

joy, laetiti-a, -ae; **shouts of joy,** clamores laetantium.

joyful, laetus.

joyfully, laete.

judge, iud-ex, -icis.

judgment, iudicium; consilium; use iudico; **in my judgment,** me iudice; pronounce j., iudico.

Julian, Iulianus.

jump, I, salio.

June, Iuni-us, -a, -um.

Jupiter, Iupiter, Iovis.

jury, iudices.

just, aequus.

just as if, velut si, with subj.

justice, iustitia, -ae.

justify, I, probo.

justly, iure.

K.

Kalends, Kalendae.

Karthage. See Carthage.

keep, servo, habeo, retineo.

keep my promises, I, fidem praesto, promissis (abl.) sto; **I keep the soldiers in the camp,** milites in castris contineo; **I keep off,** depello; **keep out,** excludo.

key, clav-is, -is, F.

kill, I, interficio.

kind, benignus.

kind of man he is, I don't know the, nescio qualis sit.

kind, of this, huius modi; **of that kind,** eius modi; **what kind,** qualis.

kindness, benevolentia; **act of kindness,** beneficium.

king, rex, regis.

know (by the senses), sentio; (a thing), scio; (a person), novi; (find out), cognosco.

knowledge, scientia.

L.

labor, labor; (vb.), laboro.

Lacedaemon, Lacedaem-on, -onis.

Lacedaemonians, Lacedaemonii.

lack, desum.

lack money, I, pecunia mihi deest.

lamb, agn-us, -i.

lamp, lucern-a, -ae.

lame, claudus; **lame n one foot,** altero pede claudus.

land, ag-er, -ri.

larger. See great.

last (in order), ultimus; (of time or position), proximus; within the last few days, his paucis diebus.

last, at, tandem, demum.

lasting, diuturnus.

late, too late, sero.

lately, nuper; superl., nuperrime.

Latin, I speak, Latine (adv.) loquor.

laugh, I, rideo.

law, lex, legis, F.; ius, iuris.

lay, lay aside, pono; **lay upon,** impono.

lay waste, vasto.

lead, I, duco; **I lead across,** transduco; **I lead back,** reduco; **I lead out,** educo.

leader, imperator; dux, ducis.

leap, I, exsulto; **leap down,** desilio.

learn, I, disco.

learned, doctus.

learning, doctrin-a, -ae.

leave, I (abandon), relinquo; **I leave the camp,** ex castris excedo; **I leave the work undone,** opus praetermitto.

legacy, use lēgo (leave by law).

legate, legat-us, -i.

legion, legi-o, -onis, F.

leisure, otium.

less, minor, -us; **at a less price,** minoris.

lest, ne.

letter, epistola, litterae.

levy, delect-us, -us; **I hold a levy,** delectum habeo.

liar, mendax, -acis.

liberty, libert-as, -atis, F.

lie (tell a falsehood), I, mentior.

lie down, I, iaceo.

life, vit-a, -ae.

lifetime of my father, in the, patre meo vivo.

light, levis, -e.

light, lum-en, -inis, N.

light, it is, lucet.

like, simil-is, -e; (vb.) volo, amo.

likely, use fut. part.

line, acies; **he drew a line,** &c., say he thought that the honorable (honestum) was one thing and the useful another.

linger, cunctor.

listen to, audio.

literature, litterae.

litter, lectic-a, -ae.

little, parvus; a l., parvum.

live, I, vivo; (dwell in) habito.

lively recollection, say memory and recollection.

London, Londini-um, -i.

long, longus; long, diu; so long, tamdiu.

longing, cupidus.

long standing, of, use vetustas.

long time, for a, diu.

look for, I, exspecto; quaero; peto.

lose, I, amitto.

loss, damn-um, -i.

lot, sor-s, -tis, F.; fortuna; fall to lot, contingo.

loud, magnus; **loudly-expressed,** use shout.

Louis, Ludovicus.

love, am-or, oris, M.

love, I, amo.

lovely (applied to a place), amoen-us; the lovely city of Athens; Athenae, urbs amoenissima.

lover, use amo.

lowest (office), imus (honor).
low price, at a, parvi.
loyal, fidus, bonus.
lucky, felix; or use opportune.

M.

mad, I am, fur-o, -ere.
madman, use furo.
made, I am, fio.
madness, insania.
magistrate, magistrat-us, -us.
magnitude, magnitud-o, -inis; often expressed by an indirect question: **I know the magnitude of the danger**, scio quantum periculum sit.

maiden, virg-o, -inis.
maintain, I, sustineo.
majority, use plerique.
make, facio; **I make war**, bellum gero, infero; **I make a march**, iter facio; **he makes it shine**, efficit ut splendeat.

man, hom-o, -inis; vir, viri; **a young man**, adulescen-s, -tis; **an old man**, senex, senis.

manage, rem gerere.
manner of life, use quemadmodum and vivo.
manumit, manumitto.
many, multi, multitudo; very many, permulti; **how many?** quot? **as many as**, tot quot.

march, iter; **I march**, iter facio; (trans.), duco.
mariner, naut-a, -ae, M.
mark of a wise man, it is the, sapientis est.
market-place, forum, i.
Mars, Mar-s, -tis.
marsh, pal-us, -udis, F.
marvellous, it is, mirum est.
mass (of the people), vulgus, -i, N.; (huge size), moles.
master (of slaves), dominus, herus; (a teacher), magister.

matter, res, rei, F.; **it matters little**, parvi interest; **it matters not to me**, nihil meā interest.

may, (= **can**), possum.
May, Maius (adj.).
meadow, pratum.
mean, sordidus.
mean-minded, say *of mean mind.*

meanness, use adj.; turpitudo, F.; **it is the height of meanness**, summae turpitudinis est.

means, use quemadmodum.
measure (out), I, metior.
measure, res.
Medea, Medea.
meet, I, occurro, obviam fio.
meeting, concio.
memory, memori-a, -ae.
merchant, mercator.
merchant-vessel, navis oneraria.

merciful, clemen-s, -tis.
message, nunti-us, -i; **a message came**, nuntiatum est.
messenger, nunti-us, -i.
midday, meridi-es, ei, M.
middle, medius; **in the middle of the road**, media via.
midnight, at, media nocte.
midst, medium.
mild, mitis.
mile, mille passuum.
military, militaris.
milk, lac, lactis.
mind, animus, mens.
miracle, miraculum; or say *great thing.*

mirror, speculum.
miser, homo avarus.
miserable, miser.
miserly, avarus.
misery, dolor, miseria.
misfortune, malum.

miss, I (feel loss of), desidero.

missile, tel-um, -i.

mistake, err-or, -oris, M.; I make this mistake, hoc erro.

mistress, be, praeesse (dat.).

Mithridates, Mithridates, -is

mix, misceo.

mob, plebs.

moderation, moderatio.

money, pecuni-a, -ae.

month, mens-is, -is, M.

moon, lun-a, -ae.

more, plus; magis.

morning, in the, mane.

most, plerique.

mother, mat-er, -ris.

motion, mot-us, -us.

motive, use cur; indicate a motive, say *show why he committed*; from a motive, use ob (with acc.), or causa (with gen.).

mount (a horse), I, equum conscendo.

mountain, mon-s, -tis, M.

move, I, moveo.

much, multus, multo (adv.)

multitude, multitud-o, -inis.

murder, caed-es, -is, F. Often expressed by perf. part. pass.: after Caesar's murder, post Caesarem interfectum.

murmur, (vb.), queror.

music, music-a, -ae.

musical, say musicorum, from neut. pl. musica.

must, p. 84, 7.

mutable, mutabilis.

my, meus.

myself, use ego or ego ipse.

N.

name, nom-en, -inis, N.

namely, omit.

narrate, I, narro.

narrow, angustus.

nation, populus, natio, gens.

native city, one's native land, patria, ae.

natural shame, say *nature and shame*.

naturally, use natura.

nature, natur-a, -ae. I don't know the nature of the man, nescio qualis sit homo; of this nature, talis.

near, prope (adv. and prep. with acc.); propinquus.

nearly, prope, paene, fere; see *about*.

necessaries, say *what is necessary*.

necessary, necessarius.

necessity, necessitas.

need, there is need, opus est, p. 74, 3.

neglect, I, neglego.

neither-nor, nec-nec.

neither of the two, neuter.

nest, nid-us, i.

never, nunquam; and never, nec unquam.

new, novus.

news is brought, nuntiatur.

next, proximus; on the next day, die postero.

night, no-x, no-ctis, F.

nine, novem.

no, adj., nullus.

no one, nemo (gen., nullius).

noble, praeclarus.

none, nemo (not used in gen. and abl.); nullus.

Nones, Non-ae, -arum.

noon, meridi-es, -ei, M.

nor, nec, neve.

Normans, Normanni.

not, non.

not yet, nondum.

nothing, nihil.

notice, give notice, certiorem facere.

novelty, use novus.

now, iam **(by this time);**
nunc **(at present);** hodie **(to-day).**

number, numer-us, -i; **I
don't know the number of
the enemy,** nescio quot hostes
sint.

numerous, multi, permulti.

nurse, nutr-ix, -icis.

O.

Oh that, utinam, p. 81.

obedience, yield. Use obey.

obey, I, pareo (r. 2).

object, I, recuso.

object, this is my, id ago;
accomplish an object, say
finish the work.

obscure, obscurus.

observe, I, cognosco.

obstinacy, pertinacia.

obtain, I, adipiscor, conse-
quor.

occasion, on that, tum.

o'clock is it, what? quota
hora est?

occupy, teneo, occupo.

occurs, it, accidit, evenit;
contingit; **(to the mind),** oc-
curro.

odd or even, par vel impar.

off (at a distance), I am,
absum; **the town is ten miles
off,** oppidum decem millia pas-
suum abest.

offend (annoy), I, offendo,
I offend against the law, legem
violo.

office, magistrat-us, -us; **I
hold office,** magistratum ob-
tineo; **(task),** munus.

officer, tribunus, legatus;
officers (military), tribuni cen-
turionesque.

often, saepe; **so often,** toties.

old, (in olden times), anti-
quus, -a, -um; **(of persons),**
senex, maximus natu; **when old,**
senex.

old age, senectus.

omit, I, omitto.

once (for), semel; **once upon
a time,** quondam; **at once,**
statim.

one (numeral), unus; **one
of the soldiers,** unus ex mili-
tibus.

one, no, nemo.

one, the, . . . the other,
hic . . . ille.

one and all, cuncti, omnes.

one by one, singul-i, -ae, -a.

one day (in the future), ali-
quando.

only, solum, modo, tantum
(placed after the word modified);
not only . . . but also, non
modo (or non solum . . . sed
etiam (or verum etiam).

onslaught, impetus.

open (throw open), I,
(trans.), patefacio; **to be open,**
pateo.

opinion, use sentio: **his poli-
tical opinion,** quid de re p.
sentit; sententi-a, -ae; ex-
istimatio.

opportunity, occasio, -onis.

oppose, I, repugno, resisto
(d.).

opposite to, contrarius
(quam).

opposition, in spite of your,
te repugnante.

oppress, gravo (r. i.).

or, aut, -ve, vel, sive.

orator, orat-or, -oris.

oratory, say *orator.*

orchard, pomarium.

ordain, I, decerno.

order, impero(d.), iubeo(acc.);
in order that, ut.

**origin, I don't know the
origin of evil,** nescio unde
malum oriatur.

otherwise than, aliter ac or ⟨before vowels⟩ atque.

ought, debeo; p. 84, 7.

our, nos-ter, -tra, -trum.

out-do, supero.

outside of, extra.

over, nimium.

over, it is, actum est de.

overpowering, say *could not be borne.*

overthrow, I, everto.

overwhelm, I, obruo.

owe, I, debeo; **it was owing to you,** per te stetet.

own, my own fault, mea ipsius culpa.

ox, bos, bovis.

P.

pain, I am in, doleo.

pain, dol-or, -oris, M.

painter, use pingo.

panic, pav-or, -oris, M.

pardon, I, ignosco; venia, ae.

parent, paren-s, -tis, M. or F.

parliament, senat-us, -us.

part, par-s, -tis, F.; **it is the part of a wise man to do this,** sapientis est hoc facere; **I for my part,** ego or equidem; **take part in,** intersum (d.).

party, partes.

party policy, say *party and policy.*

pass, (over), omitto; **pass a decree,** say *decree.*

pass (a law), perfero.

passion (anger), ira, -ae.

passionate (angry), irat-us, -a, -um (of one act); (of a habit), iracundus.

past, is, use praetereo.

patriot, vir bonus; homo patriae amantissimus.

patriotism, amor patriae.

pay, pendo, solvo.

payment, solutio, onis, F.; or use vb.

peace, pa-x, -cis, F.

peace, I hold my, taceo.

peculiar, proprius (with gen.)

pell-mell, temere.

pen, calam-us, -i.

penalty, poen-a, -ae.

penny, use as, assis, M.

people (= **men**), homines; (**a nation**), popul-us, -i.

perceive, sentio; intellego.

perfect, summus.

perfectly, use superl.

perform, fungor.

perhaps, fortasse.

perish, I, pereo.

permission, with your, tua pace.

person, homo.

persuade, persuadeo (with dat.); **I am persuaded,** mihi persuasum est.

persist, persevero.

pestilence, pestis.

phenomenon, use neut. pron.

philosopher, philosoph-us, -i.

philosophical, use gen. of *philosophy.*

philosophy, philosophia, -ae.

Phocion, Phoci-on, -onis.

pick out, eligo.

pig, sus, suis, M.

pillage. See **plunder.**

pirate, praed-o, -onis.

pitch a camp, I, castra loco.

pitch of insolence, to such, eo insolentiae.

pity, I, misereor (gen.)

pity, misericordia, -ae.

place, locus, loca.

place, I, pono.

plain, planities, campus.

plain, it is, manifestum est; apparet (-ere, -uit).

plan, consilium.

pleasant, iucundus; or use iucunditas.

please, I, placeo.

pleasing, grat-us, -a, -um.

pleasure, volupt-as, -atis, F.

plebeian, plebei-us, -a, -um.

plot, coniuratio, insidiae.

plough, aratr-um; (vb.), aro.

pluck, carpo.

plunder, diripio.

poet, poet-a, -ae, M.

point, use neut. pron.

pointed (sharp), acutus.

point out, ostendo.

policy, consilium, -i.

politics, res publica (never pl. in this sense).

Pompey, Pompeius, i.

poor, pauper, -is.

populace, vulg-us, -i, N.; plebs.

popular, gratiosus.

populous, frequen-s, -tis; often in superlative: as, **a populous city,** urbs frequentissima.

position, locus, -i; pl. loca; **(of a city),** sit-us, -us. Often expressed by a dependent question introduced by ubi: **I don't know the position of the enemy,** nescio ubi hostes sint; **maintain position,** se sustento.

possession, res, rei, F.; **get possession of,** potior.

possessor, use habeo.

possibility, range of possibility, use fieri potest.

possible, it is, potest (only with an inf. pass.); **it is p. to do this,** hoc fieri potest.

possible, as many as, quam plurimi.

possible speed, with all, quam celerrime.

post, desert, praesidium desero.

pour round, circumfundere.

poverty, paupert-as, -atis, F.

power, (civil), potest-as, -atis, F.; **(military),** imperi-um, -i; **such is the power,** tantum potest.

powerful, potens.

practicable, use facio.

practise, I, exerceo.

praise, lau-s, -dis, F.

praise, I, laudo.

pray, oro; tandem (with interrog. words).

precaution, take, provideo.

predecessor, say *who reigned before him.*

prefer, I, malo.

prefer him to you, I, eum tibi antepono.

prepare, paro.

presence, use adsum; in my presence, me praesente.

presence of mind, animus.

present, I am, adsum; **at present,** nunc.

present, donum, -i.

presently, mox, brevi.

preservation, use vb.

preserve, I, conservo.

pretend, I, simulo; (claim), dictito.

prevent, prohibeo.

prevent, to (=**in order that . . . not**), ne; p. 98.

price, pretium, -i; **at a high price,** magni; **at a low price,** parvi; **at what price,** use quantus.

prince, rex, regis.

principal, say *best*; princeps.

prison, carcer, -is; **I throw into prison,** in vincula conicio.

prisoner, captiv-us, -i.

private person, privatus.

prize, praemi-um, -i.

proceeding, res, rei, F.

procrastination, use cunctor.

procure, I, adipiscor.
profess, profiteor.
proficiency, make, proficio.
profit, quaestus.
profound, use superl. of adj.
prolong, perfero (ad.).
promise, I, promitto.
promise, promissum, -i.
proof, indicium, -i; use gen.;
it is a proof of wisdom to do
this, sapientis est hoc facere.
proper, idoneus.
property, res; sua.
proposal, use propono.
proportionate, p. 130, 7.
propose, fero.
prosecution, use accuso.
prosperity, res prosperae.
prosperous, prosperus.
protection, praesidium, or
use tueor.
protracted, diutinus.
proud, superbus.
prove, sum.
provided that, p. 102, 6
provide, I, provideo; **I pro-
vide for your interest,** tibi
prospicio; **I provide against
you,** te caveo.
providentially, divinitus.
province, provincia.
provision, I make, provideo.
provisions, commeat-us, -us.
prudent, prudens.
public, publicus.
public meeting, concio.
punish, I, punio (r. 4).
punishment, poena.
purpose, use cur.
purpose, I, statuo.
pursue, sequor; **some pur-
sue one thing, others
another,** alius aliud sequitur.
pursuit, studium.
pursuit, in, etc., say *that they
may accomplish what they desire
very much.*

Q.

quantity, vis; **I do not know
the quantity of corn there,**
nescio quantum frumenti ibi sit.
quarter, from one, etc.,
periculum ad alium aliunde
venit.
quarter was given, no, nulli
parcitum est.
queen, regin-a, -ae.
question, I, interrogo; **it is a
question (or questioned),**
dubitatur; **to my question he
gave no reply,** mihi quaerenti
nihil respondit; **ask a question,**
rogo.
quick, celer, -is, -e.
quickly, celeriter; **as quickly
as possible,** quam celerrime.
Quirites, Quirites, ium.

R.

rain, pluvi-a, -ae.
rains, it, pluit.
raise, I, tollo.
ramparts, moenia, -ium.
rapid, say *quick.*
rare, rarus.
rashness, temeritas.
rate, at any, certe.
rather, potius.
rather, I had, malo.
reach, pervenio ad.
reach the city, I, ad urbem
pervenio.
read, lego; **reading, by,**
legendo.
ready, paratus.
rear, terg-um, -i; **in the
rear,** a tergo.

reason, ratio, men-s, -tis, F.;
(cause), caus-a, ae; **for this
reason**, quam ob causam; **by
reason of**, ob (acc.), prae.; **I
don't know the reason for his
action**, nescio cur hoc fecerit.

recall, revoco; (remember),
recordor.

**receipt of the letter, on
the**, epistola accepta.

receive, I, accipio.

reckless, temerarius.

reckon, aestimo (r. i.)

recollect, recordor.

recollection, recordatio.

recommend, I, suadeo.

recover, I, convalesco; re-
cupero.

redress, remedium, -i.

reduce, subigo; **reduce to
submission**, redigo.

refill, I, repleo.

refit, reficio.

reform, corrigo.

refusal, use nolo.

refuse, I, nolo, recuso.

regard, I, specto; habeo,
duco, (**value highly**), magni
aestimo; **with regard to**, de.

regret, I, me paenitet.

reign, I, regno; **in the
reign of Romulus**, Romulo
regnante.

reject, reicio.

rejoice, I, gaudeo.

rejoicing, laetitia; or use vb.

reliance on you, I place,
fidem tibi habeo.

relieve, levo.

rely, I, confido (with dat. of
person and abl. of thing).

relying on, fretus.

remain, maneo; **I remain
behind**, remaneo; **I remain
firm**, permaneo; **it remains**,
restat (ut).

remarks, use neut. pron. and
dico.

remember, I, memini.

remind, I, commoneo.

remorse, use paenitet.

remote, remotus.

removal, use vb.

remove, I, depello.

repair, reficio.

repel, I, propulso.

repent, I, me paenitet; I re-
pent of my folly, stultitiae meae
me paenitet.

repetition, use say often.

reply, I, respondeo.

report, nuntio.

reputation, aestimatio;
(**good**), fam-a, -ae; (**bad**), in-
famia, -ae.

request, obtain, impetro.

requested, without being,
say not asked.

require, I, opus est mihi; egeo.

requite, rependo.

resentment, use aegre ferre.

resign, dedo.

resignation, with, aequo
animo.

resist, resisto (d.).

resistance, use resisto; **the
resistance ceased**, resisti desi-
tum est.

resistance, meet no, say no
one opposing tollsto.

resolve, I, statuo.

respect, observo (r. i.); res.

rest, quies, quietis, F.

rest, quiesco.

rest of the, ceter-i, -ae, -a;
the rest of the citizens, ceteri
cives; **the rest of his life**, re-
liqua aetas.

restore, I, reddo; (**strength**),
reparo, redintegro.

restrain, coerceo (r. 2).

result, res, rei, F.; event-us,
-us; **the result was that he
went away**, evenit ut abiret;
**he came back without any
result**, re infecta rediit.

retire, I, cedo.
retreat, I, me recipio; pedem refero.
return, redeo; (trans.), reddo.
return, redit-us, -us.
revile, I, vitupero, maledico.
reviler, use rel. clause.
revolt, defectio; deficio.
revolution, res novae.
revolve, moveor circa (acc.).
reward, praemium, -i.
Rhodes, Rhod-us, -i, F.
rich, dives, divitis.
riches, divitiae.
ride, I, equito; **I ride past,** praetervehor.
ridge, iugum, -i.
ridicule, I, irrideo.
right, ius, iuris, N.
right, rectus.
right hand, dextra.
ring, orbis, M.; (vb.), persono.
rise (of persons), consurgo; (of things), orior.
river, flumen.
road, via, -ae.
roam, vagor.
rock, saxum, rupes.
rod, virga.
role, partes (dare = assign; sustinere = sustain).
roll, I, volvo.
Roman, Romanus.
Rome, Roma, -ae; or say *people of Rome* (Romani).
room, left no room for doubt, haud dubium fecit.
root, say *cause.*
rose, ros-a, -ae.
rout, use vinco or fugo; strag-es, -is, F.; clad-es, -is, F.
royal, regius.
rude, rudis.
ruin, exitium; (vb.), deleo, perdo.
rule, regula, -ae.
rule, I, rego.
rumor, rumor, oris.
rush, ruo.

S.

sack, diripio.
sacrifice, posthabere.
sacrilege, sacrilegi-um, -i.
sad, maestus.
safe, tutus, incolumis.
safety, sal-us, -utis, F.
sail, vel-um, -i.
sail, I, navigo, solvo.
sailor, naut-a, -ae, M.
sake of, for the, causa (with genitive), usually placed after the word or words governed; **for its own sake,** propter se.
sake, for my, meā causā.
sally, erupti-o, -onis, F.; **I make a sally,** eruptionem facio; **I sally out,** erumpo.
salute, I, saluto.
salvation, salus, -utis, F.
same, idem; **the same . . . as,** idem . . . qui.
satisfied with, contentus (with abl.).
satisfy, I, satisfacio.
save, I, servo.
say, I, dico.
scarcely, vix.
scare, terreo.
sceptre, regnum.
scientific inquiry, say *science* and *inquiry* (cognitio).
scourge, virgis caedere.
scout, explorat-or, -oris.
scruple, religio.
Scylla, Scylla, -ae.
sea, mare, maris, N.
season, temp-us, oris, N.
second, secundus, alter; **a second time,** iterum.
secret, the secret of, use idcirco quod (*on this account because*).
secure, tutus; safety is se-cured, use adj. *safe.*
see, video.
seed, semen, inis, N.
seek, I, peto.
seem, I, videor.

seize, I, occupo, arripio.

seldom, raro.

self-commiseration, sui miseratio.

self-interest, use utilis.

select, deligo.

sell, I, vendo; **I am sold,** veneo.

senate, senat-us, -us.

send, I, mitto; **send away,** dimitto, relego; **send for,** arcesso.

sense, good sense, prudentia.

sense of shame, pudor.

sentry, cust-os, -odis.

serpent, serpen-s, -tis, M.

serve, use utor; servio.

service, meritum.

set, pono.

set out, I, proficiscor

set at liberty, I, libero; **set at head.** See **put.**

several, complures.

severity, use severus.

shadow, umbra, -ae.

shake, I, concutio; **shake off,** excutio.

shame, pudor.

shameful, turpis.

sharer, partic-eps, ipis.

she, ea.

sheep, ovis.

shield, scutum.

ship, navis, -is, F.; **a war ship,** navis longa; **a merchantman,** navis oneraria.

short, brevis; **shortly (in a short time),** brevi.

shout, clam-or, -oris, M.

show, I, ostendo.

shut, claudo.

Sicily, Sicili-a, ae.

sick, aeger.

Sidon, Sidon, -onis.

sight, conspectus.

signal, signum, -i.

silence, keep, use taceo.

silent, tacitus; **I am silent,** taceo.

silver, argentum.

simultaneously, simul.

sin, peccat-um; **I sin,** pecco.

since, abhinc; **ten years since,** abhinc decem annis or annos.

sing, cano.

single, not a, ne unus quidem.

sister, sor-or, -oris.

sit, I, consido, -sidere, -sedi, -sessum.

situation, I don't know the situation of the town, nescio ubi oppidum sit.

size, magnitudo; **I don't know the size of the island,** nescio quanta insula sit.

skilful, peritus (with gen.).

skill, peritia; scienti-a, -ae.

slaughter, clades, is, F.

slave, servus, -i.

slave to, I am, servio (dat.).

slay, I, interficio.

sleep, I, dormio.

sleep, somn-us, -i.

sleet, say *rain mixed with snow.*

slight, say *small.*

sloth, segnitia.

slow, tardus.

small, parvus; brevis.

smoke, fumus.

snake, serpens, -tis, M.

snatch (to one's self), arripio; **(snatch away from),** eripio.

snow, nix, nivis, F.

so (= thus), ita; with verbs, adeo; with adjectives and adverbs, tam; **so far from,** tantum abest ut.

society, societas, -atis, F.

soldier, mil-es, -itis.

Solon, Sol-on, -onis.

some, aliquis, nonnulli.

some day, aliquando.

somehow, nescio quo modo.

something, aliquid.

sometimes, nonnunquam.

somewhat, use comparative.

son, filius, i.

song, carm-en, -inis, N.

soon, brevi; **he came sooner than he expected,** celerius sua spe venit; **sooner** (rather), potius.

soothsayer, harusp-ex, -icis.

sorry, I am, nolo; (grieve), doleo, me paenitet.

sovereignty, regnum.

soul, anim-us, -i; **not a soul,** ne unus quidem.

source, use orior (rise).

sow, sero.

spare, I, parco.

spark, scintilla, -ae.

Spartan, Lacedaemonius.

speak, I, loquor, dico.

spear, hasta.

speech, (**language**) lingua; (discourse), serm-o, -onis; (oration), orati-o, -onis, F.

speed, celerit-as, -atis, F.; or use celeriter.

spirit, animus; ferocia.

spirited, ferox.

spoil, praed-a, -ae.

spring, ver, veris, N.

spring from, I, orior; sprung from a noble father, patre praeclaro ortus.

stab, percutio. See *strike.*

stage, theatrum; locus.

stand, I, sto; **I stand by,** adsto; **I stand around,** circumsto; **stand for,** peto; **stand ground,** consisto.

standard, signum.

star, stell-a, -ae.

stare, in face, impendeo.

start, proficiscor.

state (**condition**), stat-us, -us; (**commonwealth**), civi-

tas, -atis, F.; res publica; **keep great state,** splendide se gerere.

station, loco.

stationed, use sto.

statue, statua.

stay, I, commoror.

steel, ferrum.

step, vestigium; use **facio** and a neuter pronoun.

stick, baculum.

still, adhuc; etiam nunc (of present); etiam tum (of past); tamen.

stone, lapis, idis, M.; I throw a stone, lapidem impingo.

stop, I, desino; **stop talking,** desine loqui.

storm, tempestas.

story (**narrative**), res; fabula, -ae; **he told many stories to me,** mihi multa narravit.

straightway, statim.

stranger, alienus, peregrinus.

stream, flumen.

strength, vires, or say *how many.*

strengthen, roboro.

strike, I, percutio.

strip, exuo (abl.).

strive, I, nitor.

strong, fort-is, -e; magnus.

struggle, contenti-o, -onis, F.

study of literature, cognitio litterarum.

study, I, operam do; **I study Latin literature,** litteris Latinis operam do; **I study my interest,** mihi consulo.

subject, (=thing), res.

subjects, say *those she presides over.*

succeed (**of plans**), procedo.

succeed (**come after in succession**), **I,** excipio; **he succeeded his father on the throne,** regnum ex patre excepit.

success, meet poor, male succedo.

succor. See *aid.*

such, tantus, talis.

sudden, subitus.

suddenly, subito, repente.

suddenness. Use sudden.

sue for, peto.

sufficient, satis.

suggest, suggestion, use auctor.

suicide, commit, sibi mortem consciscere.

suitable, aptus, idoneus.

sum, summa, ae.

summer, aest-as, -atis.

summit of the hill, collis summus.

summon, voco.

sun, sol, solis, M.

sunrise, solis ortus.

superior to, I am, praesto (with dat.).

superiority. Use praesto.

superstition, superstitio.

supper, cena, -ae.

supplies, commeat-us, -us.

supply, copia.

supply with, suppedito.

support, sequor, faveo.

suppose, credo.

sure, be, certo scio.

surprise (as a foe), I, opprimo.

surrender, trado, dedo (tr).

surround, cingo, circumvenio.

survive, supersum (d.).

suspect, suspicor; **I am suspected,** in suspicionem venio.

suspicion, suspicio, -onis, F.

sustain, sustineo; (defeat), accipio.

swallow, hirund-o, -inis.

swear, I, iuro.

sweet, dulc-is, -e; **(to the smell),** suav-is.

swim, no (r. i.).

sword, gladius, -i; **or** use bellum; with fire and sword, igni ferroque; **put to sword,** say *kill.*

Syracuse, Syracus-ae, -arum.

Syracuse, of, Syracusanus.

system, ratio.

systematic study, say *system and study.*

T.

take, I, capio; **(take a town),** expugno; **take away,** eripio.

take care that, cura ut, fac ut; **take deeply to heart,** graviter ferre.

take place, fio.

take up arms, I, arma capio.

talent (ability), ingenium, -i; **(money)** talentum.

talk, I, loquor.

talkative, loqua-x, -cis.

Tarquin, Tarquinius, -i.

task, take to, reprehendo.

taste for, studium, i; **a taste for literature,** studium litterarum.

taxation, vectigalia, ium; tributum.

teach, I, doceo.

teacher, magister.

teaching, praecepta.

tear, lacrima, -ae.

tedious, longus.

tell, (bid), I, iubeo (with acc.); **(narrate),** narro, dico.

temper, animus, i.

temple, templum; aedes, -is.

tempt, illicio, ere, ui.

ten, decem.

term, condicio; **on what terms,** quanti.

terrible threats, say *terrors and threats.*

terrify, terreo.

territory, fines, ager.

terror, terror.

than, quam.

thanks, I return, gratias ago.

thanksgiving, supplicatio.

that, ille.

the, usually not expressed;
the city which ... ea urbs quae
... ; **the ... the,** p. 70, 5.

Thebes, Theb-ae, -arum.

theft, furtum, -i.

their, suus, eorum.

themselves (reflexive), se;
(emphatic), se ipsos.

then, tum, tunc.

thence, inde.

theory, say *thing.*

there, ibi, illic; *(after verbs of
motion),* eo.

therefore, igitur.

thereupon, tum.

they, ii.

thief, fur, furis.

thing, res, rei, F.

think, arbitror; **(reflect on),**
cogito; **(fancy),** puto; **(be-
lieve),** credo; I almost th.,
nescio an; p. 127, 2.

third, tertius.

thirst, sitis, -is, F.

thirteen, tredecim.

thirty, triginta.

this, these, those, hic, ille.

thorough knowledge of, use
perspectum habere.

though, quamquam.

thousand, mille; pl., millia.

threaten, I, immineo, min-
or; **I threaten him with
punishment,** supplicium ei
minor.

threats, minae.

three, tres, tria.

thrice, ter.

throne, regnum, i.

throng, multitud-o, -inis, F.

throughout, per (prep., with
acc.); **throughout the whole
city,** tota urbe.

throw, iacio.

thus (also), ita, hoc.

Tiber, Tiber-is, -is, M.

Tibur, Tibur, -is, N.

till, dum, donec.

till, I, colo.

time, temp-us, -oris, N.; **at
that time,** tum; eo tempore;
a second time, iterum.

timid, timidus.

timidity, use adj.

tired, fatigatus.

tired be, use *taedet.*

to, ad (prep. with acc.); in.

to-day, hodie.

together, simul.

toil, labor, -is, M.; (vb).
laboro.

tomb, sepulcrum, -i.

to-morrow, cras.

tongue, lingua.

too (also), quoque; with ad-
jectives or adverbs, often trans-
lated by the comparative: **too
harsh,** severior; **too much,**
nimis; p. 111, 2c.

top of the mountain, sum-
mus mons.

torture, tormentum (rack).

touch, tango.

towards, ad, erga.

tower, turr-is, -is, F.

town, oppid-um, -i.

townsman, oppidan-us, -i.

tradition, I hand down by,
trado.

train, exerceo.

training, disciplin-a, ae.

traitor, prodit-or, -oris.

tranquil, aequus.

transformation, use mutare.

travel, I, iter facio.

treachery, perfidia, -ae.

treason, proditio.

treat cruelly, saevio (in).

treaty, foed-us, eris, N.

tree, arbor, -oris, F.

tremble, tremo.

tribune, tribunus, i.
tribe, tribus; (**nation**), gens.
trifles, nugae, -arum.
triumph, use exsulto.
troops, copiae.
trouble, labor.
troublesome, molestus.
truce, indutiae.
true, verus.
trust, I, fido, mando.
truth, vera (n. pl.); veritas.
try, I, conor.
tumult, tumultus, -us.
turn, I (trans.), verto.
turn out, evado.
Tuscan, Tuscus, -a, -um.
twenty, viginti.
twice, bis.
two, duo.
tyranny, dominatio.
tyrant. rex.
Tyre, Tyrus, -i, F.

U.

unable to, I am, non possum.
unavenged, inultus.
unbearable, intolerabilis: or use *tero*.
unbroken, success, use res ei semper succedit.
uncertain, incertus.
understand, I, intellego.
undertake, I, suscipio.
undone, I leave, praetermitto.
undoubtedly, procul dubio.
unendurable, see *unbearable*.
unexpected, inopinatus.
unfortunately, *say it happened unluckily*.
unfriendly, inimicus.
unheard, inauditus.
universal, universally, use omnes, omnia.
universe, mundus.
unjust, iniquus.

unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis.
unluckily, inopportune.
unlucky, infelix.
unnatural, nefarius.
unnecessary, non necessarius.
unpopularity, invidia, -ae.
unreasonableness, use vanus.
until. See till.
unwilling, invitus; **be unwilling**, nolo.
unworthy, indignus.
upon, in.
us, nos.
use (make a use of), I, utor.
use, I am of, prosum; **what is the use?** quid refert?
used, use impf., or soleo.
useful, utilis; **useful for ruling**, utilis ad regendum.
usefulness, utilit-as, -atis, F.; or use adj.
useless, inutilis.
utility, have, use adj.
utmost, plurimus, summus.
utmost speed, to the, quam celerrime.

V.

vain, vanus; **in vain**, frustra (of the person); nequidquam (of the attempt).
valley, valles (or is), -is, F.
value, I, aestimo.
vanquish, I, supero, vinco.
variety, varietas.
various, multus; varius.
vast, maximus.
vehemence, use vehemens.
venture, I, audeo.
very, often expressed by superlative of adj. or adv.
very glad, I am, vehementer laetor.
versed in, peritus; **he was versed in law**, iuris peritus erat.

veteran, veteranus.
victorious, vic-tor, -oris.
victory, victoria, ae.
view, he had this object in, id egit; **hold a view,** sentio.
vigor, vigor, -oris, M.
villa, villa, ae.
village, vicus, -i.
violence, vis.
violent, violentus.
virtual, omit.
virtue, virt-us, -utis, F.
virtuously, honeste.
visit, I, viso.
vogue, in, use sum.
voice, vox.
vote, suffragi-um, -i.
vote, I, sententiam fero.
voyage, cursus, us; **make a voyage,** navigo.

W.

wage war, I, bellum gero, bellum infero.
wait, or wait for, I, exspecto.
walk, I, ambulo.
wall, murus.
want, say *wish;* **be wanting,** deesse.
war, bell-um, -i.
ward off, defendo.
warm, calidus.
warn, I, moneo.
waste, tero; **I lay waste,** populor.
water, aqu-a, -ae.
wave, fluct-us, -us; unda.
way, via, -ae; iter, itineris.
we, nos.
weak, infirmus.
weaken, debilito.
wealth, diviti-ae, -arum.
wealthy, div-es, -itis.
weapon, tel-um, i.
weariness, taedi-um, -i.

weary, I am, me taedet; **I am weary with the journey,** me itineris taedet.
weather, tempestas, -atis, F.
wedding, nupti-ae, -arum.
weight, pond-us, -eris, N.
well, a, puteus, i.
well, bene; **be well,** valeo.
well-born, parentibus claris ortus.
what? quis, quae, quid;
whatever, quae (pl.)
when, cum; (interrog.), quando.
whence, unde.
whenever, cum, p. 105, 6.
where, ubi quo (interrog. and rel.); **where in the world are we?** ubi terrarum (or gentium) sumus? **where from,** unde.
whether ... or, utrum ... an; p. 77; p. 113, 5.
which, (*rel.*), qui, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis; **which of two,** uter.
while, dum; **for a little while,** paulisper.
white, albus.
whither, quo.
who (*rel.*), qui; (*interrog.*), quis.
whoever, quicumque.
whole, totus.
wholly, I am wholly devoted to literature, totus litteris incumbo.
why, cur, quare.
wicked, malus.
wickedness, nefas, scelus.
will, volunt-as, -atis, F.; **against my will,** me invito.
willing, volen-s, -tis; **be w.,** volo.
win (obtain), I, consequor; **(gain the day),** vinco.
wine, vin-um, -i.
wing, of an army, cornu, us.
winter, hiems, hiemis, F.

winter (wintry), hibernus; **winter quarters**, hiberna.

wisdom, sapientia, -ae.

wise, sapien-s, -tis.

wise, I am, sapio.

wish, earnest, say *wished very much*.

wish, I, volo.

with, cum (prep. with abl.).

withdraw, abeo; abduco.

within, inter or intra (with acc.), or simply the abl.; **within ten days**, inter (*or* intra) dies decem, or decem diebus; **be within a little**, minimum abesse quin.

without, sine (prep. with abl.).

withstand, I, obsto.

witness, testis; or use *see*.

wolf, lupus.

woman, mulier.

wonder, I, miror.

wonderful, mirus; or use superl.

wood, silva.

word, verbum, dictum; **word is brought**, nuntiatur.

work, op-us, -eris, N.

world, terra; orbis terrarum; omnes gentes; homines; (universe), mundus; **all the world believes this**, nemo est quin hoc credat; **the older world**, illa prisca gens hominum.

worse, pei-or, -oris (comp. of malus).

worth, dignitas. See **worthy**.

worthy, dignus (with abl.).

would that, utinam; p. 81, 7.

wound, vuln-us, -eris, N.

wound, I, vulnero.

wrest, I, extorqueo.

wretch, miser.

wretched, miser.

write, scribo.

writer, scriptor.

writing, in writing letters, in epistolis scribendis.

wrong, iniuria, -ae; **I do wrong**, pecco; **am wrong**, erro.

Y.

year, annus, -i.

yesterday, heri; **of yesterday**, hesternus.

yet, as, adhuc.

yet (=**nevertheless**), tamen, vero.

yet, not, nondum.

yield to, I, cedo.

yoke, iugum, -i.

you, tu (sing); vos (pl.).

young, (**young man**), iuvenis, (iunior, minimus natu); adulescens.

yours, tuus; vester (pl.).

youth, iuvent-us, -utis, F. (collective noun); (time of), adulescenti-a, -ae.

Z.

zeal, studium, -i.

zealous, studiosus (with gen.); use hendiadys.

zealously, use noun.